

Parents' Guide

دليل ولى الأمر

طبعة جديدة

طبقًا لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

تطبيق التعلم التفاعلى

GPS

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

5th Primary 2024

FIRST TERM

Contents

ترجمة بعض نصوص القراءة والاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Theme 1 I discover myself

Theme 2 Myself and others




1
THEME
I discover myself



Unit 1 Life in my world

الحياة فى عالمى

Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand a story about a visit to a marine ecosystem.
  - أفهم قصة عن زيارة إلى نظام بيئى بحرى.
- understand and use relative clauses.
  - أفهم وأستخدم جمل الوصل.
- read and understand a story about a mangrove ecosystem.
  - أقرأ وأفهم قصة عن النظام البيئى لأشجار المانجروف.
- listen to and understand an interview with a wildlife photographer.
  - أستمع وأفهم حوار مع مصور الحياة البرية.
- understand and use abstract nouns.
  - أفهم وأستخدم الأسماء المجردة.
- use linking words to write about how to stay healthy.
  - أستخدم كلمات الربط للكتابة عن كيفية الحفاظ على صحتك.
- read and understand a story about a grassland ecosystem.
  - أقرأ وأفهم قصة عن النظام البيئى للأراضى العشبية.
- revise and use "will, can, might, must, can't" for predictions, offers, possibility, and obligation.
  - أراجع وأستخدم "will, can , might, must, can't" للتنبؤات والعروض والإمكانيات والالتزامات

Lesson 1 ▶ A Great Trip!



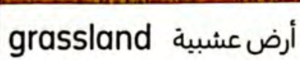


I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

Different ecosystems الأنظمة البيئية المختلفة





grassland أرض عشبية



forest غابة



rainforest غابة مطيرة



marine بحرى



freshwater ماء عذب



desert صحراء

thick	سميك	non-living things	كائنات غير حية
living things	كائنات حية	community	مجتمع
illnesses = diseases	أمراض	National Park	محمية طبيعية

Extra vocabulary

mangrove forests	غابات المانجروف	global warming	احتباس حرارى
deep	عميق	coast	ساحل
storm	عاصفة	species	فصائل/أنواع
environment	بيئة	salt water	مياه مالحة
pond	بركة مياه	shallow water	مياه ضحلة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Present		Regular Past	Irregular Present		Irregular Past
arrive at	يصل إلى	arrived at	fight	يحارب	fought
protect	يحمي	protected	grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew
interact	يتفاعل	interacted	catch	يلحق/يصطاد	caught
survive	ينجو	survived	lose	يخسر	lost

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

grow out of	ينمو خارجًا من	safe home for ...	مأوى آمن لـ ....
along the coast	بإمتداد الساحل	in many ways	بطرق عديدة
wash away	يجرف - يزيل	interact with	يتفاعل مع
four times more	أكثر بأربع أضعاف	among the roots	بين الجذور

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Nabq National Park	national	- Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai.
	marine	- Mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.
	grow	- Mangrove trees can grow out of the sea.
	roots	- The roots of mangrove trees help them get oxygen.
	thick leaves	- Mangrove thick leaves stop the plants losing water when it is very hot.
	home	- The forests are a safe home for many animals.
	global warming	- Mangrove trees help us with global warming.
Ecosystems	animals - plants	- An ecosystem is all animals and plants in an area.
	pond - forest	- It can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.
	interact	- In an ecosystem, living things interact with non-living things.
	community	- The different species make a community.
	species - survive	- The different species need each other to survive.

• **Did you know ?** هل تعلم؟

• The dorcas gazelle never needs to drink ! It gets all the water it needs from plants.

• إن غزال الدوركاس لا يحتاج إلى أن يشرب ! فهو يحصل على الماء الذى يحتاجه من النباتات.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Whales are .... animals.
   a. desert b. rainforest c. sky d. marine
2. Summers are very hot in a .... area.
   a. river b. sea c. desert d. marine
3. Scientists have found a cure for some ....
   a. roots b. illnesses c. parties d. schools
4. We need food and water to ....
   a. play b. count c. draw d. survive
5. There is a strong .... so we can't go outside today.
   a. pond b. storm c. lake d. sky
6. The sea is safe .... for many marine animals.
   a. home b. forest c. park d. oasis
7. We can get .... from the River Nile.
   a. freshwater b. salt water c. dirty water d. bad water

II Listening and Reading

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Pop Quiz

• ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
• تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Our School Trip to Nabq National Park by Heba Osman

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the **coast**[1] here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine **ecosystem**[2].

When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees' leaves, they felt very **thick**[3]. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

We learned that mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees **protect**[4] the **non-living things**[5] and the **living things**[6] in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow

[1] ساحل
[2] نظام بيئي
[3] سميك
[4] يحمي
[5] كائنات غير حية
[6] كائنات حية

water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish **survive**[7].

The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of tree. Mangrove trees help us with global warming.

We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There were a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers. People say mangrove honey helps fight some **illnesses**[8] and diseases.



What I liked most about the mangroves was seeing all the different species making a **community**[9]. The plants, animals, and insects all **interact**[10] with each other to survive. I've never seen so many different species of **butterflies**[11]! It was a great day.



(7) ينجو
(8) أمراض
(9) مجتمع
(10) يتفاعل
(11) فراشات

Make logical an inference from the text.
قم بعمل استنتاج منطقي.

Learn 1. How can mangrove trees help us with global warming?

- The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of tree.

Practice 2. What do the bees make from the yellow flowers?

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area.

The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.

In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil.

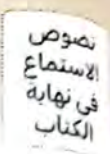
The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

النظام البيئي هو جميع الحيوانات والنباتات في منطقة ما، يمكن أن يكون النظام البيئي صغيرًا مثل بركة المياه أو كبيرًا مثل الغابة.
في النظام البيئي، تتفاعل الكائنات الحية مثل النباتات والحيوانات مع الكائنات غير الحية مثل الماء والصخور والتربة.
الأنواع (الفصائل) المختلفة في النظام البيئي تصنع مجتمعًا، وكلها بحاجة إلى بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة.



Ecosystem	Living things	Non-living things
Desert	animals (camels, lizards, foxes, insects)	sand, rocks
Rainforest	plants, trees, birds	soil
Marine	fish	freshwater - salt water

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The mangrove trees help the .... in many ways.
   a. environment b. land c. air d. sea
2. Mangrove trees .... the living things.
   a. destroy b. protect c. kill d. live
3. Mangrove's deep .... stop the sand washing away.
   a. rocks b. flowers c. roots d. dates
4. The mangrove forests are so important for the .... ecosystem.
   a. land b. marine c. magic d. movie

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are all the animals and plants in an area called?

....

2. What are the examples of living things?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

tourist - ecosystem - species - forest - interact

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The (1).................... can be as small as a pond or as big as a (2).................... . In an ecosystem, there are living things such as plants and animals. They (3).................... with non-living things such as water, rocks and soil. These different (4).................... in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week, we visited Nabq. We went to learn why mangrove forests are important. Nabq is a very big National Park. It is in South Sinai. Along the coast, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove trees. We saw mangrove trees growing out of the sea. They have **amazing** roots. These roots help them get oxygen. The leaves of mangrove trees stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

The mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. The mangrove trees are a safe home for hundreds of animals, birds and insects. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots. They live here so that bigger fish can't catch them. In this way, they protect themselves.



A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The general idea of the text is " .... ".

a. Greenhouse | b. Climate change
c. Mangrove forests | d. Global warming

2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means ....

a. wonderful b. ugly c. bad d. cold

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How do the little fish protect themselves ?

....

4. What do the leaves of the mangrove trees do ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. for – animals – The forests – a safe – home – are.

....

2. mangrove – can – How – help – trees – us ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Nabq National Park مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What is Nabq ?
- Where is Nabq ?
- Are the mangrove forests important for the marine system ?
- Do mangrove trees help the environment ?
- Where do mangrove trees grow ?

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2 ▶ Language



I Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء	medicinal plant	نبات طبى
Mount Sinai	جبل سيناء	wadi	وادى
lizard	سحلية	neighbor	جار

II Language

Relative clauses جمل الوصل

(who / which / where)

We use "who" for people.

- يستخدم ضمير الوصل (who) بمعنى (الذى / التى) مع الأشخاص (العاقل) :

who (الذى / التى / الذين)

I have a friend. He lives in Cairo. (He → subject)

I have a friend who lives in Cairo. (who → relative pronoun)

We use "which" for things.

- يستخدم ضمير الوصل (which) بمعنى (الذى / التى) مع غير العاقل (الجماد والحيوان) :

which (الذى / التى / الذين)

ex. Nada has a book which is about medicinal plants.

We use "where" for places.

- يستخدم ضمير الوصل (where) بمعنى (حيث) مع الأماكن :

where (للمكان) حيث

ex. Cairo is the city where my cousins live.

Notes for parents

- **Did you know ?** هل تعلم؟
- Sharm el-Sheikh is now a "green city" because its hotels use solar energy and all its buses are electric.
- تعتبر مدينة شرم الشيخ الآن "مدينة صديقة للبيئة" لأن الفنادق التى بها تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية وجميع حافلاتها تعمل بالكهرباء

Note: لاحظ:

- A wadi is an ecosystem which is normally dry.
- A wadi is a place where desert animals look for food.

• الجملة الأولى "wadi" نقوم بوصف المكان لذا نستخدم "which".

• الجملة الثانية "wadi" نتحدث عن المكان حيث يبحث الحيوانات عن الطعام لذا نستخدم "where".



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I went to the club .... I played football.
   a. which b. who c. what d. where
2. We learned about the area .... we live.
   a. who b. that c. where d. which
3. Dina has a friend .... lives in Siwa.
   a. who b. which c. where d. when
4. You can see many fish .... swim in the shallow water.
   a. who b. where c. which d. what
5. We met a man .... works in a garden.
   a. where b. who c. which d. when
6. Do you know Mrs Hala .... works in a hospital ?
   a. where b. when c. who d. which
7. The house .... he lives is big.
   a. when b. where c. who d. which
8. Cairo is the city .... my cousin lives.
   a. who b. which c. where d. when
9. Lara always gives us figs .... are from her garden.
   a. who b. whose c. where d. which
10. Younis is a boy .... wants to be a dentist.
    a. when b. which c. where d. who
11. This is the park .... we played football.
    a. which b. where c. that d. who

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

12. A doctor is a person .... helps patients.
a. who b. which c. whose d. where

13. This is the book .... I read.
a. where b. who c. when d. which

14. Do you know the zoo .... we visited ?
a. who b. which c. where d. whose

15. Football is the sport .... I prefer.
a. which b. when c. who d. where

16. She went to the market .... she bought many things.
a. when b. who c. which d. where

17. This is the city .... is famous for the sea.
a. which b. where c. who d. when

18. The book .... Ali read, was boring.
a. who b. which c. when d. where

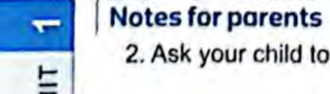
19. We went to the cinema .... we watched a nice film.
a. which b. who c. when d. where

20. Fares is the boy .... likes swimming at night.
a. who b. whose c. when d. which

2 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the word[s] in brackets.

تدريب تلقائى على القواعد اللغوية

1. Baher is the boy .... [which] saved the dog.
2. Cairo University is the place .... [who] Ahmed studied medicine.
3. Port Said is the city .... [who] Mr Fahmi is going to move.
4. Milk is a drink .... [who] gives us healthy bones.
5. The woman .... [which] lent you the money is kind.
6. The living room is the room .... [who] he spends most of the time.



Notes for parents

2. Ask your child to complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة من الكلمات بين الأقواس.

Lesson 3

▸ A rainforest ecosystem





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



wildlife حياة برية



photographer مصور



canopy مظلة (الطبقة العليا من الغابة)



hummingbird طائر طنان النحل

goal	هدف	success	نجاح
beauty	جمال	patience	صبر
luck	حظ	exhibition	معرض - عرض

• Extra vocabulary

interview	مقابلة شخصية	interactive	تفاعلي
technology	تكنولوجيا	custard apple	فاكهة القشطة الهندية

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened	cut down	يقطع	cut down
hope	يأمل	hoped	find	يجد	found

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

- The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.
- All the living things in the rainforest need each other.
- Birds and animals help the trees as they take seeds to other parts of the forest and new trees grow.
- Custard apple trees are important to the rainforest ecosystem because animals eat the fruit to survive.
- When people cut down trees, animals will lose their homes and food.

• **Tip !**

• You can use technology to make your presentation more interesting and interactive.

• يمكنك استخدام التكنولوجيا لجعل العرض التقديمي الخاص بك أكثر متعة وتفاعلاً.

II Language

▸ Adjectives and abstract nouns.

Adjective الصفة		Abstract noun الاسم المجرد (المعنوى)	
• It's a word that describes the noun. الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم.		• It's a noun for an idea, quality, or state rather than a concrete object. الاسم المعنوى هو اسم يصف فكرة أو سمة أو حالة ولايصف أسم حسي.	
beautiful	جميل	beauty	جمال
lucky	محظوظ	luck	حظ
patient	صبور	patience	صبر
successful	ناجح	success	نجاح

ex. - The Amazon rainforest is beautiful. "adjective"
- She showed us the beauty of the Amazon rainforest. "noun"



Pop Quiz on Language

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He isn't .... He doesn't want to wait.
   a. patient b. patience c. the patience d. patients
2. They weren't ...., they missed the bus.
   a. lucky b. luck c. unluck d. unlucky
3. My granddad doesn't have .... to learn about computer.
   a. patient b. a patient c. patience d. patients
4. Huda's exhibition was a great ....
   a. success b. successful c. succeeded d. succeed
5. Noha is .... Her friends love her.
   a. beauty b. the beauty c. beautiful d. beauties
6. My brother likes the .... of nature.
   a. beautiful b. beauty c. beauties d. a beautiful

Notes for parents
• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

survive - custard apple - ecosystem - cut down

Noha : What are you doing, Amal ?
Amal : I'm doing a research about Amazon rainforest.
Noha : Why are you interested in doing this research ?
Amal : Because the Amazon rainforest is a very important (1) ....
Noha : Why are (2) .... trees important to the rainforest ecosystem ?
Amal : Because animals eat the fruit to (3) ....
Noha : Why is it dangerous to (4) .... trees ?
Amal : Because animals will lose their homes.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The fox is an animal .... lives in the desert.
   a. who b. which c. where d. when
2. They visited a wadi .... they saw some animals.
   a. when b. which c. who d. where
3. Summer is the season .... comes after spring.
   a. where b. who c. which d. what
4. There is so much .... in the Amazon rainforest.
   a. beauty b. beautiful c. a beautiful d. a beauty

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. custard – What – apples – do – taste ?

....

2. patience – You – need – a lot of – have – to.

....

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

Amazon rainforest مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• custard apples • living things • ecosystem • survive

....
....
....
....



Lesson 4

Story: In the mangrove tree





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



dugong الطوم (بقرة البحر)



kingfisher طائر الرفراف



lizard سحلية



worm دودة

Extra vocabulary

difficult	صعب	confused	مرتبك / متحير
better	أفضل	carefully	بحذر / بحرص
worse	أسوأ	news	أخبار
buzzing sound	صوت طنين (النحل)	truck	شاحنة
mystery	سر غامض	together	معًا
suddenly	فجأة	mistake	خطأ
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	surprised	مندهش
worried	قلق		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	think	يفكر	thought
explain	يشرح - يوضح	explained	come	يأتي	came
reply	يرد	replied	fly down	يهبط	flew down
cry	يبكي - يصيح	cried	hear	يسمع	heard
carry	يحمل	carried	bring	يحضر	brought
shout	يصرخ	shouted	understand	يفهم	understood
smile	يبتسم	smiled	sit	يجلس	sat

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get better	يتحسن	come up out of	يصعد من / يخرج من
reason for	سبب لـ	make a mistake	يخطئ (يرتكب خطأ)
look sad	تبدو حزينًا	What's the matter ?	ما الأمر ؟

• Study these Definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
worried	You feel unhappy because you're thinking about problems or things that could happen. تشعر بعدم السعادة لأنك تفكر في مشاكل أو أشياء من الممكن أن تحدث.
surprised	Something happens and you didn't think it would happen. شئ حدث ولكنه كان لا يعتقد حدوثه.
confused	You find it difficult to understand something..تجد صعوبة في فهم شيء.

II Listening and Reading

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

In the mangrove tree

The beginning

[1] طائر الرفراف
[2] سحلية
[3] صعب

A **kingfisher**[1] was visiting her old friend, the **lizard**[2], in a mangrove tree. She flew down and sat next to the lizard.

"You look sad," said the kingfisher to the lizard. "What's the matter?"

"People came and cut down some trees. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's **difficult**[3] to find food."



worm

"Oh no!" said the kingfisher, looking worried. "I'm hungry."

• Help your child to read and identify the given definitions. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات المعطاة له.
• Help your child look at the pictures, read the story and learn. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ، يقرأ القصة ويتعلم.

The Middle

Suddenly[4], a dugong came up out of the sea.

"Hello Dugong!" said the lizard, surprised.

"Hello Lizard. Hello Kingfisher. I have some bad news," said the dugong.

"What is it? Are the people back again ?" asked the kingfisher.

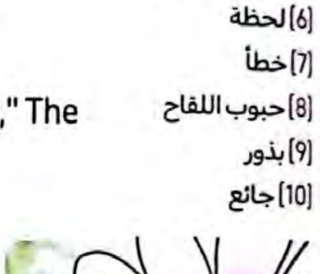
"Yes, they are. Can't you hear them?" replied the dugong. The lizard and the kingfisher listened carefully. They heard **trucks**[5] and people shouting.

"Oh no. How many more mangrove trees are they going to cut down?" cried the lizard.

kingfisher



dugong



[4] فجأة
[5] شاحنات صغيرة
[6] لحظة
[7] خطأ
[8] حبوب اللقاح
[9] بذور
[10] جائع

The End

At that **moment**[6], the animals heard a buzzing sound. There were three bees buzzing around the tree.

One of the bees flew close to the other animals and said," The people are not going to cut down more trees.

They are going to plant other mangrove trees. They understand that they made a **mistake**[7].

They have learned that the mangrove trees are important, so they're planting new ones. They brought us here to help the trees grow."



pollen

"How will you help the trees grow?" asked the dugong, confused.

"We carry **pollen**[8] from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make **seeds**[9]," explained the bee.



lizard

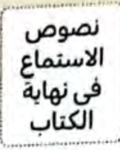
"So, is life going to get better here ?" asked the kingfisher.

"Yes, it is," replied the bee, smiling.

"Good!" said the lizard and the kingfisher together. "We're **hungry**[10]!"



General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A kingfisher was visiting .... in a mangrove tree.
   a. the lizard b. the cat c. the fish d. people
2. The lizard was ....
   a. happy b. worried c. sad d. hungry
3. The kingfisher was ....
   a. thirsty b. unhappy c. worried d. excited
4. People came to .... down some trees.
   a. cut b. mix c. see d. plant

2 Read and complete the text the with words from the box.

bees – food – cut down – people – natural

The kingfisher visited her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they (1) .... the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find (2) .... to eat. The dugong told his friends, the kingfisher and the lizard, that the (3) .... were back again. They could hear trucks and people shouting. The animals were worried. Then, they heard some (4) .... buzzing around the tree.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. aren't – People – cut down – going to – trees – more.

....

2. buzzing – around – The bees – were – the tree.

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There was once a lazy man who hated working. He always looked for easy ways to earn money. One day, he heard that a rich man was giving away his gold coins. He ran to the rich man's house and asked for some coins. The rich man said he would give him one coin for each step he took around his garden. The lazy man thought this was a great deal and started walking. But soon he got tired and stopped. He only got four coins. The moral of the story is : Laziness pays poorly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is " .... ".
   a. Giving away your coins b. Laziness pays poorly
   c. Earning money easily d. Walking around the garden

2. The opposite of the word "rich" is ....
   a. active b. poor c. clever d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many coins did the poor man get ?

....

4. Why did the lazy man go to the rich man's house ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They weren't .... that day. They didn't see their favorite animal.
   a. luck b. lucky c. unluck d. unlucky

2. Ali is .... player. He got many medals.
   a. success b. a successful c. succeed d. successful

3. I saw the man .... cut down the tree.
   a. who b. which c. where d. what

4. The mangrove tree is a place .... the lizard live.
   a. which b. where c. when d. who

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Mangrove trees"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- pollen
- flowers
- bees
- plants
- mangrove tree

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

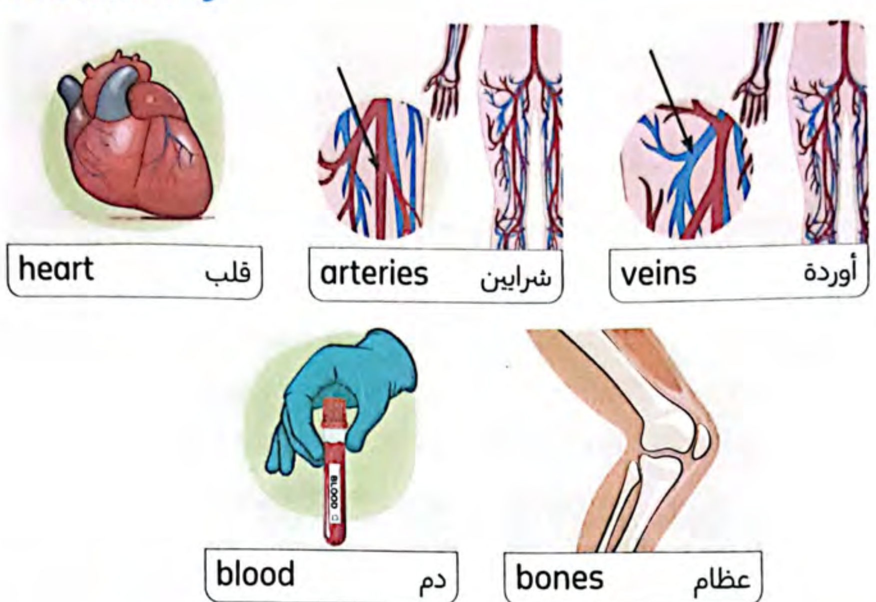
Lesson 5

▶ I have a healthy heart



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



Extra vocabulary

humans	بشر	new born	حديث الولادة
vitamin D	فيتامين د	carbon dioxide	غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون
minerals	معادن	healthy	صحى
gym	نادى رياضى	adult	شخص بالغ
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	circulatory system	الجهاز الدورى
oxygen	غاز الأكسجين	mammals	ثدييات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
move	يتحرك	moved
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
pump	يضخ	pumped

Irregular

Present		Past
spend	يقضى	spent
beat	ينبض	beat
ride	يركب	rode
keep	يحفظ	kept

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

similar to	مشابه لـ	move away	يتحرك بعيدًا
instead of	بدلًا من	carry away	يحمل بعيدًا
the amount of	مقدار / كمية من	get sick	يصاب بالمرض

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Circulatory system	veins	- Our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies.
	move - away	- Arteries move blood away from our heart.
	carry - blood	- Veins carry blood to the heart.
Our heart	beat	- Our heart beats about 70 times a minute.
	weighs	- The human heart weighs less than half a kilo.
	man's heart	- A man's heart is heavier than a woman's heart.
	woman's heart	- A woman's heart beats faster than a man's heart.
	pump	- The right side of your heart pumps blood into your lungs.
	left side	- The left side of your heart pumps blood back through your body.

II Listening and Reading

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Are plants similar to humans ?

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our **circulatory system**[1]. Instead of water, our **veins**[2] and **arteries**[3] carry **blood**[4] around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it.
The **nutrients**[5] and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use **carbon dioxide**[6] like plants do.
Humans need **sunlight**[7], too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from **getting sick**[8]. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel **happy**[9]!

[1] الجهاز الدورى
[2] أوردة
[3] شرايين
[4] دم
[5] عناصر غذائية
[6] غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون
[7] أشعة الشمس
[8] يصاب بالمرض
[9] سعيد

arteries veins

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Your heart **beats**[1] over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart **healthy**[2]. When you walk, run, swim, or **cycle**[3], you make your heart work harder. If you **exercise**[4] **regularly**[5], your heart works better and you can get the **minerals**[6], **nutrients**[7], and **oxygen**[8] you need more easily.

(1) ينبض
(2) بصحة جيدة
(3) يركب دراجة
(4) يتدرب
(5) بانتظام
(6) معادن
(7) عناصر غذائية
(8) غاز الأكسجين





Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

How to keep your heart healthy
كيف تحافظ على صحة قلبك

- Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and fish.
  تناول الطعام الصحى مثل الفاكهة والخضروات والسمك.
- Play sports with your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside.
  العب الرياضة مع أصدقائك. تدرب بانتظام فى النادى الرياضى أو بالخارج.
- Keep moving. Walk, run, swim or ride your bike.
  استمر فى التحرك. امشى، اجرى، اسبح أو اركب دراجتك.
- Take some time to relax and be quiet. خذ بعض الوقت للراحة وكن هادئ.



Pop Quiz on Reading

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :**

pumps - time - vegetables - ride - beat

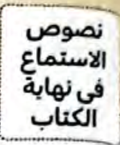
Asmaa : How can I keep my body healthy?
Amany : Try to eat healthy food like fruit and (1)................... .
Asmaa : How can we keep our heart healthy?
Amany : Walk, run or (2)................... your bike.
Asmaa : What does our heart do?
Amany : It (3)................... blood around our bodies.
Asmaa : How often does our heart (4)................... ?
Amany : It beats over 100,000 times per day.



• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.
• Help your child read the sentences and learn.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص
• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويتعلم

General Exercises on Lesson 5



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Most people have three .... every day.
   a. showers b. meals c. stories d. drinks
2. The main meals are breakfast, lunch and ....
   a. dinner b. football c. English d. tennis
3. It is important to eat .... food.
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. terrible d. healthy
4. We shouldn't drink too many .... drinks.
   a. fizzy b. lazy c. good d. healthy

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why should we keep our heart healthy?

   ....

2. What does our heart pump around our body?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

bad – faster – heart – weighs – beats

Our veins and arteries carry blood around the body. The arteries move blood away from our (1) .... The veins carry blood to the heart. Our heart (2) .... over 100,000 times per day. The human heart (3) .... less than half a kilo. A man's heart is heavier than a woman's heart. A woman's heart beats (4) .... than a man's heart.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Our veins and arteries carry .... around the body.
   a. blood b. flood c. fruit d. juice

2. Vitamin D can help protect us from getting ....
   a. brave b. happy c. busy d. sick

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Give a suitable title to the given text.

....

4. Why is sunlight important for people ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. should – a week – How often – exercise – you ?

....

2. important – healthy – It's – your heart – to keep.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Circulatory system" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- arteries
- blood
- heart
- oxygen
- veins

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 6

▸ Writing : Linking words

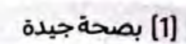


I Vocabulary

• Vocabulary

sports	رياضات	reason	سبب
contrast	تناقض	result	نتيجة
pool	حمام سباحة	sports center	مركز رياضى
lamb	لحم ضأن (لحم الخراف)	healthy diet	نظام غذائى صحى
pomegranate	فاكهة الرمان	popular	شائع / مشهور
physical	بدنى / جسدى	positive	إيجابى
tired	متعب	negative	سلبى
do exercise	يتمرن	naturally	بطبيعة الحال

II Listening and Reading



☆ **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Seleem is a **healthy**[1] boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, **vegetables**[2], and **rice**[3]. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to **relax**[4], so he reads a **book**[5].

"I do a lot of **exercise**[6] because it's **good**[7] for me," says Seleem. "Your **heart**[8] is very important so you have to keep it healthy." Seleem is **right**[9]. It's important to do exercise.

He has a healthy **family**[10], too. His sister Amira plays tennis and his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his **bike**[11], but they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

(1) بصحة جيدة
(2) خضروات
(3) أرز
(4) يسترخى
(5) كتاب
(6) تمرين
(7) جيد
(8) قلب
(9) على حق
(10) عائلة
(11) دراجة



Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture, read the text and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يقرأ النص ويتعلم.

III Language

A conjunction (linking word): is a word that connects ideas and sentences together. أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الأفكار والجمل ببعض.

and .... **but** .... **so** .... **because**

1 and (و)

Usage: الاستخدام

- To link different things in a list. لربط أشياء مختلفة في قائمة.

Fish, chicken ( ) **, and** ( ) beans are all healthy food.

- To link two similar sentences. لربط جملتين متشابهتين.

I love playing volleyball ( ) **and** ( ) I love tennis.

2 but (لكن)

Usage: الاستخدام

- To show a contrast. We can link a positive and a negative sentence. لإظهار التناقض. يمكننا ربط جملة إيجابية وجملة سلبية.

He likes lamb ( ) **, but** ( ) he doesn't like fish.

3 so (لذلك)

Usage: الاستخدام

- To show the result of something. It can link two sentences. لإظهار نتيجة شيء ما. يمكنها ربط جملتين.

Doaa wants to keep her heart healthy ( ) **, so** ( ) she does exercise.

• Help your child learn how to link sentences. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يربط الجمل.



4 because (لأن)

Usage : الاستخدام

- To show a reason for something. It links two sentences.

لإظهار سبب شيء ما. إنها تربط جملتين.

I went to the library **because** I needed a book.

Note.

- Remember to use a comma « , » after each word in a list.

تذكر أن تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية بعد كل كلمة في قائمة.

- She bought some peppers , carrots , tomatoes , and onions.

- Use linking words to connect your ideas and express yourself naturally.

استخدم كلمات الربط لربط أفكارك والتعبير عن نفسك بشكل طبيعي.



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Yesterday, I was ill .... I didn't go to work.
   a. because b. so c. but d. and
2. Gamila likes swimming, ... she doesn't like running.
   a. but b. because c. and d. so
3. Mohammed eats dates, pomegranates, ... figs.
   a. because b. but c. so d. and
4. We eat a lot of fruit .... it is healthy.
   a. and b. so c. because d. but
5. He likes to play football, ... he doesn't like tennis.
   a. and b. so c. because d. but
6. I love playing tennis .... I love football, too.
   a. and b. but c. so d. because
7. It's a holiday, ... we can go to the club.
   a. because b. so c. but d. as
8. I eat healthy food .... I play a lot of sports.
   a. but b. and c. as d. so
9. This is a popular club .... there are always a lot of people.
   a. but b. as c. so d. or
10. I don't like karate, ... I love football.
    a. so b. because c. and d. but

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

General Exercises on Lesson 6

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How does Noha's mom go to work?

....

2. What do Amira and Dina do to relax?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

tennis – work – unhealthy – exercise – healthy

Ali is a healthy boy. He eats (1).................... food like fruit and vegetables. He likes to do some (2).................... to keep his heart healthy. He has a healthy family. His sister Dina plays (3).................... and his sister Reem plays football. His mom walks to (4).................... His parents don't play sports. They walk or ride bikes.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nada is a healthy girl. She loves sports. She plays volleyball and tennis at the club. She eats healthy food like fruit and vegetables. She doesn't like to eat unhealthy food. She doesn't eat chocolate because it has much sugar. She drinks fresh juice and lots of water. She doesn't drink cola. She always does a lot of exercise because it's good for her health. She plays sports with her friends at the club. It's important to do exercise to keep our heart healthy. She has a healthy family, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is "........................".
   a. Bad life   b. Our heart
   c. Healthy life   d. Good students
2. .... is a place where we can play sports at it.
   a. Home   b. Hospital   c. Office   d. Club

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why isn't chocolate healthy?

....

4. How can we keep our heart healthy?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I was tired .... I went to bed very late.
   a. because   b. so   c. and   d. but
2. I have one brother .... two sisters.
   a. because   b. so   c. and   d. but
3. We should take our umbrellas .... it's raining.
   a. so   b. but   c. because   d. and
4. He is a good player, ... he doesn't win any medals.
   a. but   b. and   c. so   d. because

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. keep – should – heart – We – our – healthy.

....

2. important – It – exercise – is – to do.

....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about how to be healthy to your friend Ahmed. Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com. Your name is Seif and your email address is seif@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- vegetables
- relax
- exercise
- heart

From	
To	
Subject	

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 7

▶ Story : Waiting For The Rain



 I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

cub	شبل (صغير الأسد)	grass	عشب/حشائش
strange	غريب	hunger	جوع

• Extra vocabulary

feeling	شعور / إحساس	happily	بسعادة
pollution	تلوث	dead	ميت
possible	ممكن	warm	دافئ
without	بدون	impossible	مستحيل

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يمكث	stayed	lie in	يستلقي	lay in
laugh	يضحك	laughed	catch	يصطاد	caught
die	يموت	died	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	fall	يسقط	fell

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come back	يعود	two weeks later	بعد أسبوعين
run away	يهرب	on the ground	على الأرض
Let's + inf.	هيا بنا + مصدر الفعل	have fun	يستمتع
look worried	يبدو قلقًا		

II Listening and Reading

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Waiting for the rain

The beginning

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. **Cub**[1] was with his mother, and he lay in the **sunshine**[2]. But his mother looked worried.

"I hope it rains soon," she said.

"Why do you want it to rain?" asked Cub. "It's lovely and warm. We can play in the sunshine."



"If it doesn't rain, the **grass**[3] won't grow. Then we will be hungry," she answered. Cub started to laugh. "What do you mean? We eat meat, not grass!" He ran away to play with his brothers and sisters, but his mother looked at the sky and worried.

[1] شبل
[2] ضوء الشمس
[3] عشب/حشائش
[4] معدة
[5] جوع
[6] ميت

The Middle

Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard. There was no rain, and the plants were brown. Now, Cub had a strange feeling in his **stomach**[4] : **hunger**[5].

"Can we catch a rabbit to eat?" he asked his mother.

"I can't find any rabbits," she said sadly. "Some rabbits have gone to other places. Some rabbits might be **dead**[6]."

"Why?" asked Cub.

"Because there isn't any rain. Without rain, the grass can't grow. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food."

"Then we don't have any food!" answered Cub. Now he understood.

"What can we do?" "We must wait for rain. If it doesn't rain, we must move to a different place." "So let's go! We can't stay here without food!" said Cub, who was very worried now.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the story.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ القصة.

The End

His mother smelled the air. She saw a thin gray cloud start to move through the blue sky.

"Let's wait one more day," she said.

Cub went to bed hungry, but in the morning, he woke up to hear rain falling on the ground.

He ran **outside**[7] with his brothers and sisters, and they played in the cool water. Mother lion smiled.

"Do you like the rain now, Cub ?" she asked.

"Yes, I do! Now the grass will grow, the rabbits will come back, and we won't be hungry anymore!" said Cub, happily.



[7] بالخارج

III Language

Modal verbs with (will / won't - can/can't - might - must)

1 "will" / "won't" (سوف)

▸ **Usage** : To talk about something we know / don't know about the future.

* تستخدم (will / won't) لتعبر عن شئ سيحدث أو متوقع حدوثه أو عدم حدوثه في المستقبل.

Subject + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. I will go to Alexandria in summer.

- He won't go to Aswan in spring.

2 can / can't (يستطيع / لا يستطيع)

▸ **Usage** : To express ability / inability. للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة.

▸ To ask if something is possible. للسؤال عما إذا كان فعل الشئ ممكنًا أم لا.

▸ To express that something is impossible. للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث الحدث.

Subject + can / can't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Can + subject + inf. .... ?

ex. - He can climb a tree.

- They can't run fast.

ex. Can we catch rabbits to eat ?

- Yes, we can. - No, we can't.

ex. Without rain, the grass can't grow.

3 might (ربما)

▸ **Usage** : We use "might" when we don't know if something is true or not.

تستخدم "might" عندما لا نعلم ما إذا كان الشيء صحيحًا أم لا [عدم التأكد / الاحتمالية].

Subject + might + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. Some rabbits might be dead.

4 "must / mustn't" (يجب أن / لا يجب أن)

▸ **Usage** : To talk about things we have to do or (not to do).

للحديث عن الأشياء التى يجب فعلها أو لا يسمح بفعلها.

Subject + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. You must look right and left before you cross the road.

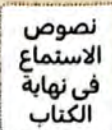
- You mustn't sleep in the class.

05 min Pop Quiz on Language

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. You .... use your mobile in the classroom.
   a. must b. can c. might d. mustn't
2. He .... win the match, I am not sure.
   a. will b. must c. should d. might
3. He .... carry the box. He is too weak.
   a. can b. must c. should d. can't
4. Next year, Ali .... a new car.
   a. will buy b. bought c. has bought d. buys
5. My brother .... swim because he is only two months old.
   a. can b. must c. should d. can't

General Exercises on Lesson 7



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Cub lay in the ....
   a. grassland b. sunshine c. sunset d. sky
2. Cub's mother looked ....
   a. tired b. worried c. angry d. happy
3. The .... was hard.
   a. ground b. land c. grass d. table
4. The plants were ....
   a. green b. yellow c. black d. brown

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

dead - grass - animals - meat - rain

Mother lion : I hope it rains soon.

Cub : Why do you want it to (1) .... ? We can play in the sunshine.

Mother lion : If it doesn't rain, the (2) .... won't grow. Then we will be hungry.

Cub : What do you mean ? We eat (3) .... not grass.

Mother lion : I can't find any animals to catch.

Cub : Why ?

Mother lion : If the grass doesn't grow, the (4) .... don't have any food.

Cub : We must move to a different place.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can't – hunger – The cat – sleep – because of.

....

2. can't – any –rabbits – I – find.

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If it doesn't rain, animals .... be hungry.
   a. is   b. will   c. are   d. was
2. Can you .... me ? - Yes, I can.
   a. helped   b. helping   c. help   d. helps
3. Without rain, some rabbits .... be dead.
   a. can't   b. mustn't   c. might   d. won't
4. I have an important exam tomorrow. I .... study hard for it.
   a. must   b. mustn't   c. might   d. can't

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A rabbit was living in a forest. He was very afraid of a lion who ruled the forest. The lion was unkind and liked to annoy the other animals. One day, the lion decided to have some fun and chased the rabbit. The rabbit ran for his life and reached a cave. The rabbit saw a big hole in the cave and jumped into it. The lion followed him and also jumped into the hole. But the hole was a trap and the lion can't come out of **it**. The rabbit escaped and lived happily ever after.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ....
   a. rabbit   b. cave   c. hole   d. lion
2. The lion was a .... animal and liked to bully other animals.
   a. kind   b. helpful   c. cruel   d. nice

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the lion decide to do ?

....

4. What happened in the end ?

....





Identify the general idea of the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة) للنص.

Step 1 ◂ اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.



- The text is about "................".
  Or : The main/general idea of the text is about ....
  Or : The text talks about "................".
  Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
  a. The digestive system   b. The bones
  c. The respiratory system   d. The heart (circled)

Step 2 ◂ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community.

- The text is about "A / An ....".
  Or : The main/general idea of the text is about ....
  Or : The text talks about ....
  Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
  a. ecosystem   b. desert
  c. game   d. sport

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (النباتات والإنسان) و (النظام البيئى فى الغابات المطيره) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Plants and humans	**Write the meaning :** ضوء الشمس .... غاز الاكسجين .... مشابه .... أوردة .... دم .... ضوء الشمس	**Complete the sentences :** 1. Humans are .... to plants. 2. Our veins and arteries move .... around our body. 3. The nutrients and .... that we need are in our blood. 4. We get Vitamin D from	**Write a paragraph using the sentences :** "Plants and humans" ....
A rainforest ecosystem	تتفاعل .... ينجو .... كائنات حيه .... نظام بيئى .... حياة برية .... يقطع	1. The Amazon rainforest is a very important .... 2. All parts of the rainforest ecosystem .... 3. Custard apple trees help many animals to .... 4. All the .... in the rainforest need each other.	**Write an email using the sentences :** "A rainforest ecosystem" ....





Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Ecosystems	animals – plants	An ecosystem is all animals and plants in an area.
	small – pond	It can be as small as a pond.
	big – forest	It can be as big as a forest.
	interact	In an ecosystem, living things interact with non-living things.
Nabq National Park	big	Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai.
	forests – marine	Mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.
	grow out	Mangrove trees can grow out of the sea.
	roots – oxygen	The roots of mangrove trees help them get oxygen.
	safe	The forests are a safe home for many animals.
	help	Mangrove trees help us with global warming.
Circulatory system	veins	Our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies.
	blood	Arteries move blood away from our heart.
	carry	Veins carry blood to the heart.
	need	The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood.
	vitamin D	We can get vitamin D from sunlight.
	protect	Vitamin D can protect people from getting sick.
A rainforest ecosystem	rainforest	The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem.
	living things	All the living things in the rainforest need each other.
	cut down	When people cut down trees, animals will lose their homes and food.



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢١ جملة).

1 The Amazon rainforest ecosystem

The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem[1]. All the living things in the rainforest need each other[2]. Birds and animals help the trees[3]. They take seeds to other parts of the forest and new trees grow[4]. When people cut down trees, animals will lose their homes[5].

2 Ecosystems

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area[6]. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest[7]. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil[8]. The different species in an ecosystem make a community[9]. They all need each other to survive[10].

3 Our heart

The heart is an important organ[11]. Our heart beats over 100,000 times a day[12]. A man's heart is heavier than a woman's heart[13]. A man's heart beats slower than a woman's heart[14]. The right side of your heart pumps blood into your lungs[15]. The left side of your heart pumps blood back through your body[16].

4 Nabq National Park

We went to Nabq National Park[17]. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem[18]. Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests[19]. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them[20]. That is how mangrove trees help young fish to survive[21].

Review on unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

grassland	مرعى / أرض عشبية	heart	قلب
forest	غابة	global warming	احتباس حرارى
desert	صحراء	living things	كائنات حية
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	photographer	مصور
freshwater	ماء عذب	wildlife	حياة برية
seeds	بذور	custard apple	فاكهة القشطة الهندية
lizard	سحلية	cub	شبل (صغير الأسد)
pollen	حبوب لقاح	illnesses	أمراض

Language

A Relative clauses :

(who) → for people (الذى) ← للأشخاص

- This is the doctor who helps sick people.

(which) → for things (الذى) ← لغير العاقل

- The coat which I bought is too big.

(where) → for places (حيث) ← للأماكن

- Cairo is the city where I live.

B Modal verbs :

1. will / won't + inf. → for prediction
   - I will be happy if my team win the match.
2. can / can't + inf. → for ability
   - He can climb the tree.
3. might + inf. → for possibility
   - Some rabbits might be dead.
4. must / mustn't + inf. → for obligation
   - You must be quiet in the library.

Test 1 on Unit 1

- نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.
- التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mangrove trees can grow in .... water.
   a. fresh b. salt c. sweet d. sour
2. Mangrove trees .... the marine ecosystem.
   a. protect b. damage c. destroy d. kill
3. The leaves of mangrove trees take more .... from the air than other trees.
   a. oxygen b. carbon dioxide c. water d. gas
4. Bees can make a lot of honey from the .... of mangrove trees.
   a. roots b. leaves c. stems d. flowers

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How many friends have you got ?

....

2. Who is your best friend ?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

important – volleyball – sports center – healthy – chocolate

Ali : Hello, Omar. Where are you going ?
Omar : I'm going to the (1)................... because it's basketball club today.
Ali : Is there a (2)................... club at the sports center ?
Omar : Yes, it's on Fridays.
Ali : I want to be (3)................... so I play a lot of sports.
Omar : Me, too. It's (4)................... to have a healthy diet.
Ali : Great ! Do you want to play tennis next weekend.
Omar : Good idea.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week, I read an interesting story. It was about Cub and his mother. It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried because there wasn't rain. She hoped it would rain soon. She told the cub that if it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then they will be hungry. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits won't have any food and then they won't get rabbits to eat. Rabbits might be dead. The cub asked his mother to go to different place to get food. But it rained, and cub was happy again.



A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits won't find ....
   a. rain b. drink c. food d. salt
2. The underlined word "**Cub**" means ....
   a. adult lion b. big bird c. baby lion d. baby bird

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What was the story about ?
   ....
4. How did the mother feel at the start of the story ?
   ....

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

	T	F
1. Wadi El Gemal is in the Eastern Desert.		
2. Jubari followed his father for his first year.		
3. Jubari wanted to stay in wadi el Gemal.		
4. Jubari wasn't brave.		

B. **Complete the following sentences.**

1. Jubari learned to .... away from predators.
2. Gazelles' favorite food is the desert ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They weren't .... that day. They didn't meet the famous scientist.
   a. lucky b. luckly c. unlucky d. luck
2. We went to the cinema .... we watched a nice film.
   a. which b. who c. when d. where
3. My mom bought oranges, bananas, ... figs.
   a. but b. and c. so d. because
4. Can we .... a rabbit to eat ?
   a. catches b. caught c. catching d. catch

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. get – from – We – vitamin D – the sun.
   ....
2. carry - Veins - to – blood – the heart.
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Mangrove forests"

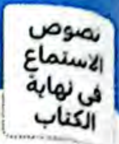
Guiding elements :

• marine ecosystem • oxygen • thick leaves • global warming
• home • sea

....
....

Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات



تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The kingfisher and the .... were friends.
   a. lion b. lizard c. crab d. dog
2. People came and cut down some ....
   a. wood b. trees c. tables d. leaves
3. The trees protect the .... and the fish.
   a. butterflies b. worms c. insects d. lizards
4. The kingfisher was ....
   a. happy b. excited c. worried d. funny

(Giza - October 2023)

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How many times does our heart beat in a minute ?
   ....
2. Which mammal has the largest heart in the world ?
   ....

(Cairo - El Nozha 2023)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

protect – ecosystem – sunlight – food – happy

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own (1) .... but we get vitamin D from (2) .... This can (3) .... us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel (4) .... *(Qalyubia - Obour 2023)*

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive. The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming. We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There are a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make special honey from the mangrove flowers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The mangrove trees help young fish ....
   a. die b. destroy c. survive d. damage
2. The leaves of mangrove trees take .... from the air.
   a. oxygen b. fish c. carbon dioxide d. butterflies

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What kind of living things live in the mangrove forests?

....

4. What do bees make from mangrove flowers?

....

(Cairo - Abden 2023)

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari wasn't brave.	☐	☐
2. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.	☐	☐
3. Jubari was with his mother, Subira.	☐	☐
4. Jubari loved desert daffodils.	☐	☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. .... saw a Nubian ibex.
2. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for ....

(Kafr El-Sheikh 2023)

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fish, chicken, ... fruit are all healthy food. *(Kafr El-Sheikh 2023)*
   a. and b. but c. so d. because
2. I have a friend .... lives in Aswan. *(Cairo - Marg 2023)*
   a. where b. who c. which d. when
3. Manal can't sleep well .... she has a headache. *(Beni Suef - Beba 2023)*
   a. but b. because c. so d. why
4. Ali is the boy .... wants to be a vet. *(Cairo - El Sahel 2023)*
   a. which b. when c. where d. who

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. veins – do – What – arteries – and – carry? *(Cairo - Zyton 2023)*

....

2. does – your – How – beat – often – heart? *(Luxor - Luxor 2023)*

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"An ecosystem"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

• animals • small • plants • living
• area • non-living

....

....

(Luxor – Esna 2023)



Unit 2 Look around you
انظر حولك

Aims of Unit Two : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- learn words connected to geography, geology, and extreme weather.
  - أتعلم كلمات مرتبطة بالجغرافيا والجيولوجيا والطقس المتطرف.
- read and understand two articles about places in Africa.
  - أقرأ وأفهم مقالين عن الأماكن في أفريقيا.
- review the past simple and learn to use the present perfect.
  - أراجع الماضي البسيط وأتعلم استخدام المضارع التام.
- listen and understand people talking about important geographical features.
  - أستمع وأفهم الأشخاص الذين يتحدثون عن ملامح جغرافية مهمة.
- understand a story about a storm-chaser.
  - أفهم قصة عن مطارد العواصف.
- find out about volcanoes on the island of Java.
  - أكتشف عن البراكين في جزيرة جافا.
- write a description of an unusual geological formation and learn how to introduce a topic.
  - أكتب وصفًا لتكوين جيولوجي غير المعتاد وأتعلم كيفية تقديم موضوع ما.
- understand a story about a balloon ride.
  - أفهم قصة حول ركوب المنطاد.

Lesson 1

▸ Wonders of Africa



I Vocabulary

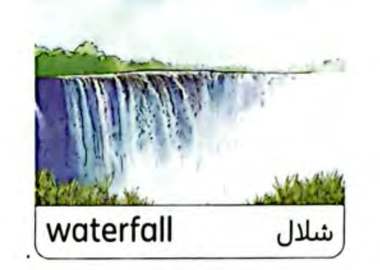
Key vocabulary


dunes كثبان رملية


volcano بركان


crater فوهة بركان


valley وادى


waterfall شلال

Extra vocabulary

continent	قارة	buffalos	جاموس
enormous	ضخم	leopard	فهد
volcanic	بركانى	tropical	استوائى
Arctic	القطب الشمالى	Antarctic	القطب الجنوبى
wetland	أرض رطبة	natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية
coast	ساحل	hole	فتحة / ثقب
canyon	أخدود [وادى ضيق]	narrow	ضيق

Famous places and natural wonders أماكن مشهورة وعجائب طبيعية

Ngorongoro Crater	فوهة بركان نجورونجورو	Victoria Falls	شلالات فيكتوريا
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى
Tanzania	جمهورية تنزانيا	Zambezi River	نهر زامبيزى [فى أفريقيا]
Zimbabwe	زيمبابوى [دولة أفريقية]	Zambia	جمهورية زامبيا [فى أفريقيا]

• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
form	يتكون - يتشكل	formed	erode	ينحت	eroded
erupt	يثور (البركان)	erupted	cover by	يغطى بـ	covered by

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make noise	يصدر ضوضاء	send out	يبعث - يُخرج
about the size of ...	يقارب حجم	in the middle of	فى منتصف
farther up	فى الأعلى	go on an adventure	يذهب فى مغامرة

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
erode	changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea, etc. تغير أو تدمر عن طريق المطر، الرياح، البحر ... إلخ
crater	the large round hole in the middle of a volcano فتحة دائرية كبيرة فى منتصف البركان
valley	a low area of land between two mountains منطقة منخفضة من الأرض بين جبلين
wetland	an area of land that is often covered by water منطقة من الأرض غالبًا ما تكون مغطاة بالمياه
canyon	a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks مكان ضيق عميق حيث يتدفق النهر بين الصخور الطويلة
erupt	send out smoke and fire (from a volcano) انبعاث الدخان والنار من البركان
dune	a hill made of sand shaped by the wind تل من الرمال تم تشكيله عن طريق الرياح

05 min. **Pop Quiz on Vocabulary**



على المفردات اللغوية

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... and elephants are enormous animals.
   a. Dogs   b. Buffalos   c. Cats   d. Turtles
2. Africa is one of the largest .... in the world.
   a. villages   b. cities   c. continents   d. countries
3. There're many sand .... in the desert.
   a. tunes   b. dunes   c. islands   d. oceans
4. A .... is a large round hole in the middle of a volcano.
   a. dune   b. bridge   c. crater   d. bottom

Notes for parents

• **Did you know ?** هل تعلم؟

• There are thousands of cenotes in Mexico. People go swimming and diving in their cool, clear water.
هناك الآلاف من العيون الجوفية فى المكسيك. يذهب الناس للسباحة والغوص فى مياههم الباردة الصافية.

• There are more than 20 deserts around the world. Asia has the most deserts of the continents.
هناك أكثر من عشرين صحراء حول العالم. قارة آسيا لديها معظم الصحارى فى القارات.

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer. اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Natural wonders of Africa	African continent	The African continent is an amazing place.
	famous	Africa has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world.
	world	The Ngorongoro is the largest volcanic crater in the world.
	erupted	It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago.
	wetlands	There are wetlands and forests inside the Ngorongoro Crater.
	animals - birds	You can see lots of different animals, birds and plants there.
	waterfalls	There are enormous waterfalls on the Zambezi River.
	canyon	Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded.
	noise	When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise.
	three	Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes.
	mountain	Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa.
	ecosystems	The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems.
	largest - desert	The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world.
	cover	The Sahara Desert covers eleven countries.

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz



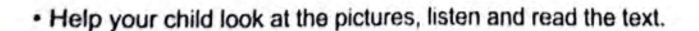
- ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Let's read about four of these.

Ngorongoro Crater

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when



• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص

a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffalos, and leopards.

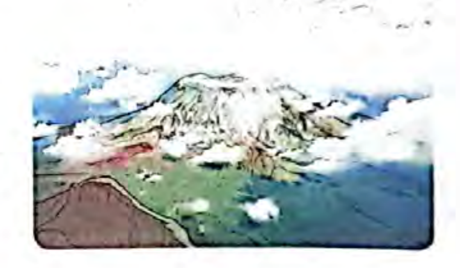
Victoria Falls

This <u>enormous</u> waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!



Mount Kilimanjaro

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is <u>difficult</u>. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.



The Sahara Desert

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but are cold deserts). It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand dunes can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.



Determine the meaning of words.

حدد معاني الكلمات.

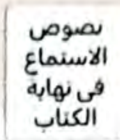
Learn 1. The underlined word **<u>difficult</u>** means.................. .

a. easy b. simple c. hard d. small

Practice 2. The underlined word **<u>enormous</u>** is the opposite of.................. .

a. big b. huge c. tall d. small

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The African continent is a/an .... place.
   a. amazing b. terrible c. expensive d. bad
2. It has mountains, deserts, valleys and ....
   a. seas b. rainforests c. parks d. fields
3. There are .... coasts and waterfalls in the African continent.
   a. ugly b. beautiful c. bad d. cold
4. It has some of the most famous natural .... in the world.
   a. wonders b. glasses c. trains d. flags

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the largest hot desert in the world ?

   ....

2. How many countries does the Sahara cover ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

storm - difficult - ice - ecosystems - tallest

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the (1) .... mountain in Africa. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is (2) .... The mountain is very big and has lots of different (3) .... It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ngorongoro Crater, Mount Kilimanjaro, Victoria Falls and the Sahara Desert are the natural wonders of Africa. The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffalos, and leopards.

Victoria Falls is on Zambezi River. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls in a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is " .... in Africa".

a. Grasslands b. Deserts c. Rainforests d. Natural wonders

2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....

a. mountain b. volcano c. African continent d. Ngorongoro Crater

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where's Victoria Falls ?

....

4. Mention two animals live in Ngorongoro Crater.

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. has – different – Mount – lots of – ecosystems – Kilimanjaro.

....

2. Desert – eleven – The Sahara – countries – covers.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The Sahara Desert"

Guiding elements :

- sand dunes
- dry
- largest
- cover

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



I Vocabulary

Vocabulary

the Nile	نهر النيل	climate change	تغير المناخ
ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	geographical facts	حقائق جغرافية
field	حقل	airplane	طائرة
the Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	papyrus	نبات البردى
environment	بيئة	decade	عقد (فترة عشر سنوات)

II Language

1 The Past Simple Tense — ا. زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

▸ To talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

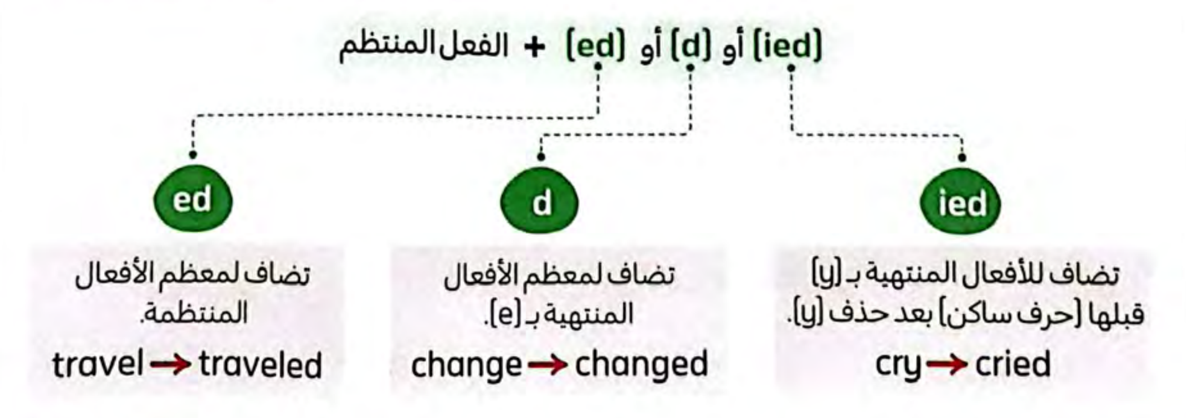
◂ للتحدث عن الأفعال التى بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

◂ يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل كالآتى :

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

الفعل المنتظم + (ed) أو (d) أو (ied)



◂ لاحظ أن : التصريف الثانى للفعل (play) هو (played)، لا يتم حذف (y) لأنها سبقت بحرف متحرك وليس ساكن.

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

التصريف الثانى للفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ كما هو.

Present	drink	sleep	see	am/is	win	buy	cut	are
Past	drank	slept	saw	was	won	bought	cut	were

ex.



She listened to music.
↓
التصريف الثانى للفعل [المنتظم]



He built our home.
↓
التصريف الثانى للفعل [غير المنتظم]

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + did not = didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة.

ex.
- She didn't listen to music.
  ↓ inf.
- He didn't build our home.
  ↓ inf.

3 Interrogative statement الجملة الاستفهامية

[Did / Wh-word + did] + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ....?

ex.
- Did you do your homework? – Yes, I did. – No, I didn't.
- What did you do? – I cleaned the room.

Key words : من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط

in the past	فى الماضى	last	year	السنة الماضية
[فترة زمنية] + ago	منذ		month	الشهر الماضى
yesterday	أمس		week	الأسبوع الماضى
once	ذات مرة		Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضى

2 The Present Perfect Tense ٢. زمن المضارع التام

Usage : الاستخدام

- To talk about actions that started in the past and continue to the present.
- للتحدث عن أفعال بدأت في الماضي ومستمرة في المضارع.
- To talk about an experience.
- للتحدث عن خبرة أو تجربة ما.

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع → **have** + **Past Participle**
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → **has** + التصريف الثالث

ex.
- Walid has traveled by bus, taxi and train.
- They have worked as teachers since 2011.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I, We, You, They, اسم جمع → **have not (haven't)** + **Past Participle**
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → **has not (hasn't)** + التصريف الثالث

ex.
- They haven't played tennis before.

3 Interrogative statement الجملة الاستفهامية

Yes / No question السؤال بـ «هل»

Have / Has + subject الفاعل **+ P.P. ..... ?**

ex.
- Have they seen an elephant ?

- Yes, they have.
- No, they haven't.

2. Help your child know how to use the present perfect tense. - ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم زمن المضارع التام.

Key words : الكلمات الدالة

already	since	never	ever	yet	for
بالفعل	منذ	أبدًا	من قبل	حتى الآن	لمدة

The Present Perfect with "ever" and "never"

A "ever" with Yes / No question :

◂ تستخدم "ever" مع زمن المضارع التام عند السؤال بـ «هل» بمعنى «من قبل». [عند السؤال عن خبرة/ تجربة سابقة]

Formation : التكوين

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + ever + P.P. ..... ?

للإجابة المختصرة نستخدم :

- Yes, الفاعل + have / has.
- No, الفاعل + haven't / hasn't.

ex. - Has Mom ever made fesikh ?
- Yes, she has.
- No, she hasn't.



B "never" with negative sentences :

تستخدم "never" مع زمن المضارع التام عند النفي. [تعبر عن عدم وجود خبرة سابقة]

Formation : التكوين

Subject الفاعل + have / has + never + P.P. ....

ex. - He has never eaten sayadeya.

◂ لاحظ أن : التصريف الثالث للفعل المنتظم هو نفسه التصريف الثانى.

play	played	played

walk	walked	walked

◂ عند استخدام [never] في الجملة فإننا لا ننفى بـ [not] حيث إنها تحمل معنى النفى.

- She has never met Sama before.

◂ يمكن استخدام [ever] في السؤال والإجابة بـ [never] عند النفى.

ex. - Have you ever traveled by plane ?
- للإجابة بالنفى : - No, I have never traveled by plane.

C already

ex. - He has already played the match.

- I have told you this story already.

◄ تستخدم "already" في الاثبات قبل التصريف الثالث للفعل أو في نهاية الجملة.

D yet

ex. - She hasn't finished her homework yet.

◄ تستخدم "yet" في نهاية الجملة المنفية.

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle (p.p.)
is / are يكون	was/were	been
see يرى	saw	seen
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
do يفعل	did	done
go يذهب	went	gone
make يصنع	made	made
tell يخبر	told	told
drink يشرب	drank	drunk
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
meet يقابل	met	met
break يكسر	broke	broken
grow يزرع	grew	grown
fly يطير	flew	flown
ride يركب	rode	ridden
give يعطى	gave	given
write يكتب	wrote	written
swim يسبح	swam	swum
take يأخذ	took	taken
have / has تملك	had	had



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They .... football in the garden yesterday.
   a. played b. are playing c. play d. plays
2. Ali .... never met a famous person.
   a. has b. have c. are d. can
3. They have .... animals at the zoo.
   a. saw b. see c. seen d. sees
4. Yesterday, it .... rainy and stormy.
   a. is b. was c. were d. are
5. We .... the zoo last Friday.
   a. visited b. have visited c. will visit d. visit
6. Have you ever .... to China ?
   a. travel b. traveled c. travels d. traveling
7. I .... finished my homework yet.
   a. won't b. hasn't c. don't d. haven't
8. He has .... Aswan with his parents.
   a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting
9. Ahmed has never .... a famous person.
   a. meets b. met c. meeting d. meet
10. Have you .... ridden a horse ?
    a. never b. since c. for d. ever
11. Adam .... to the museum last month.
    a. gone b. goes c. going d. went
12. .... Hani ever traveled by train ?
    a. Has b. Have c. Is d. Are
13. They .... ready for the last exam.
    a. didn't b. weren't c. don't d. isn't

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

·اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

14. I have .... on a ship.

a. travel b. travels c. traveling d. traveled

15. The children .... the lost bag already.

a. finds b. is finding c. have found d. has found

16. We .... Aswan yet, but we want to.

a. haven't visited b. aren't visiting

c. weren't visiting d. don't visit

17. Noha .... dinner for her family yesterday.

a. made b. makes c. making d. make

18. He didn't .... to the park yesterday.

a. went b. goes c. go d. going

19. Ali and Amir .... played tennis before.

a. hasn't b. aren't c. doesn't d. haven't

20. He got up and .... to school.

a. goes b. go c. gone d. went

2 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

تدريب تلقائى
على القواعد
اللغوية

1. They have .... (saw) him several times before.
2. We .... (has) never been to England.
3. Have you .... (never) traveled by plane ?
4. Yesterday, it .... (is) rainy and stormy.
5. I .... (gone) to bed early yesterday.
6. .... (Do) Fares travel by train ? - Yes, he did.
7. .... (Having) you ever been to New York ?
8. I .... (don't) drink milk for breakfast yesterday.
9. Did he .... (went) to the zoo three days ago ?
10. We .... (seen) a comic film last night.

2. Ask your child to write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب الشكل الصحيح من الكلمات بين الأقواس.



Lesson 3

Man-made wonders of Africa

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

man-made	من صنع الإنسان	adventure	مغامرة
paintings	رسومات	archaeologist	عالم آثار
century	قرن [مائة عام]	ruins	حطام - بقايا

• Extra vocabulary

quiet	هادئ	monument	أثر	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
incredible	لا يصدق - مذهل	stone walls	جدران حجرية	language	لغة
visitors	زوار	history	تاريخ	develop	ينمى - يطور
bridge	كوبرى	natural world	العالم الطبيعى	column	عمود

• Famous places أماكن مشهورة

the Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	the Afrikaans Language Monument	أثر / نصب اللغة الأفريكانية [فى جنوب أفريقيا]
The Sphinx	أبو الهول		
the Temples of Abu Simbel	معابد أبو سمبل	Nyungwe National Park	حديقة نيونغوى الوطنية
the Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك	Kano City Walls	أسوار مدينة كانو [نيجيريا]
The Canopy Walk	ممر كانوبى [رواندا]	Pyramids of Meroë	أهرامات ميرو [السودان]
the Fish River Canyon	أخدود نهر فيش	Okavango	دلتا اوكافنجو [بتسوانا]
Great Zimbabwe	مدينة زيمبابوى العظمى	Red Sea Coral Reef	الشعاب المرجانية بالبحر الأحمر [مصر]

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

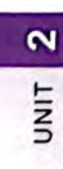
all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	the highest part of	أعلى جزء من
above the ground	على سطح الأرض	made of	صنع من

Notes for parents

• **Did you know ?** There are 54 countries in Africa today. People think there are 1.500 - 2.000 different languages! The main language is Arabic, and there are many other important ones such as Swahili and Yoruba, as well as English, French and Portuguese.

هل تعلم ؟

• يوجد ٥٤ دولة فى أفريقيا اليوم. يعتقد الناس أنه يوجد من ١٥٠٠ إلى ٢٠٠٠ لغة مختلفة فى أفريقيا! اللغة الرئيسية هى اللغة العربية، ويوجد العديد من اللغات الأخرى الهامة مثل السواحيلية واليوروبا بالإضافة إلى اللغة الانجليزية واللغة الفرنسية واللغة البرتغالية.





Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Man-made wonders of Africa	incredible	The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people have made many incredible things.
	Egypt	Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt.
	paintings	In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago.
	ruins	In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe.
	monument	The Afrikaans Language Monument is a newer monument in South Africa.
	adventure	Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي على المفردات اللغوية

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Pyramids are .... wonders.
   a. man-made b. natural c. environmental d. modern
2. The temple was built up on four ....
   a. columns b. lines c. shops d. triangles
3. After the building falling down, there were many ....
   a. games b. ruins c. snow d. runs
4. Last year, my brother climbed a mountain. It was a great ....
   a. wedding b. adventure c. med d. apartment
5. I saw a/an .... film. It was exciting.
   a. lazy b. quiet c. calm d. adventure
6. In the museum, there are a lot of ....
   a. monuments b. mountains c. lakes d. rivers
7. A / An .... is a person who is interested in ancient monuments.
   a. doctor b. vet c. nurse d. archaeologist

★ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Man-made Wonders of Africa

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too.
Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt : the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago. They often show animals and people. Archaeologists think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.



Paintings in a cave

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries. It had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world.



Ruins of Great Zimbabwe

A newer monument is in South Africa. The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975.
The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.



The Canopy Walk

Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park. The bridge was built in 2010. It's 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so visitors can see monkeys and birds.

General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The natural world in Africa is ....
   a. bad   b. dirty   c. beautiful   d. expensive
2. .... in Africa have made incredible things.
   a. Animals   b. People   c. Seas   d. Cities
3. The most important .... -made wonders in Egypt are the Pyramids.
   a. nature   b. man   c. natural   d. plastic
4. People from all over the .... come to visit these wonders.
   a. world   b. school   c. continent   d. valley

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

birds - planes - adventure - bridge - highest

The Canopy Walk is one of the man-made wonders of Africa. Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest (1) .... on the Canopy Walk in Nyungwe National Park. The (2) .... was built in 2010. It is 160 meters long. It is in the (3) .... part of the trees, so the visitors can see monkeys and other (4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People in Africa have made many **incredible** things. There are a lot of man-made wonders in Africa.

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11^{th} and 15^{th} centuries. It had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world.

In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in caves which people made thousands of years ago. They often show animals and people. Archaeologists think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is .... of Africa.
   a. traditional clothes   b. man-made wonders
   c. natural wonders   d. natural resources.
2. The underlined word "**incredible**" means ....
   a. economy   b. big   c. wonderful   d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When was Great Zimbabwe built ?

....

4. What do the paintings in North Africa show ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Have you ever .... saydeya ?
   a. eating   b. eaten   c. ate   d. eats
2. My uncle .... told us about his trip to Luxor.
   a. have   b. was   c. has   d. is
3. Last month, Noura .... her grandparents.
   a. visiting   b. has visited   c. visited   d. visits
4. My sister has never .... an elephant.
   a. saw   b. seen   c. see   d. sees

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. to visit – places – like – Which – you – would ?

....

2. desert – Has – visited – she – the – ever ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Man-made wonders of Africa"

Guiding elements :

- archaeologists
- paintings
- the Pyramids of Giza
- the Sahara Desert

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4

▶ Story : The storm-chaser



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary


hurricane إعصار


dust storm عاصفة ترابية


thunderstorm عاصفة رعدية


flood فيضان

• Extra vocabulary

storm-chasers	مطاردي العواصف	heavy	غزير
frightened	خائف	loud	صاخب - عالي الصوت
extreme weather	طقس قاس	below	أسفل
forecast	تنبؤ بالطقس / يتنبأ	situation	موقف

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	win	يفوز	won
photograph	يصور	photographed	drive	يقود	drove

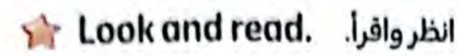
• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- interested in مهتم بـ
- have / has been to ذهب إلى مكان وعاد
- keep me safe يحميني - تبقيني بأمان
- take notes about يدون ملاحظات عن
- look like يشبه
- win a prize for يفوز بجائزة لـ

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Storm-chasers	hurricane	Storm-chasers are people who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather is forecast.
	close - study	They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.
	photograph	They have cameras to photograph these events like floods, thunderstorms, dust storms .... etc.

II Listening and Reading



Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

The storm-chaser

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago, Kamal's parents said, "You can come with us when we next go away for work."

Kamal was very excited because his parents were storm-chasers! These are people who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather is forecast. They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.

Kamal and his parents flew in a big plane to the USA where they could study hurricanes.

"How can I help you when you work ?" Kamal asked them when they arrived. "You can take some photos for us," they said, and they took something from a bag. It was a new camera!

Kamal had seen thunderstorms in Egypt, but not a hurricane. It was very exciting.

When the hurricane was twenty kilometers away, they drove out to see it. Kamal took some photos of the hurricane through the car window while his parents were outside taking notes about how big the hurricane was. The wind was very strong and very loud and Kamal took many photos.

"Are you frightened?" his dad asked Kamal.

"No, because I know you'll keep me safe," said Kamal.

When the storm came too near to them, they drove away.



Since that trip, Kamal has been to many other places with his parents. He has seen heavy snow in the mountains, floods in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about the causes of extreme weather, such as global warming, and he has taken hundreds of photos.

Last year, his mom said, "Why don't you send some photos to this online competition?"

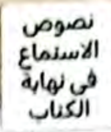
So Kamal sent the photos you can see below. He won first prize for child photographers, and he also found that he is one of the world's youngest storm-chasers!

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How did Ali and his parents go to the USA ?

....

2. Why did Ali and his parents go to the USA ?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

causes – study – hurricane – extreme – cameras

Storm-chasers are people who travel to places where there is extreme weather. The extreme weather might be a (1).......................... or a thunderstorm. They get very close to the extreme weather to (2).......................... it. They always have (3).......................... to photograph these events like floods, thunderstorms and dust storms. The storm-chasers want to learn more about the (4).......................... of the extreme weather.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week, I read an interesting story about a young boy called Tommy. Tommy was a greedy boy who always wanted more than he needed. He never shared his toys, snacks, or books with anyone. He always wanted the biggest piece of cake, the most colorful balloon, or the shiniest coin. He thought that having more things would make **him** happy, but he was wrong. He soon realized that no one liked to play with him or be his friend. He felt lonely and sad. He wished he had been more generous and kind. He learned that greed is not good.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tommy was a/an .... boy who always wanted more than he needed.

a. greedy b. generous c. lazy d. active

2. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to ....

a. Tommy b. balloon c. lesson d. friend

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the moral of the story ?

....

4. What was the result of Tommy's greed ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... you heard about any extreme weather events ?
   a. Are b. Do c. Have d. Has
2. Amr has .... photos of many extreme weather events.
   a. took b. taken c. takes d. taking
3. I have never .... in a dangerous situation.
   a. be b. was c. been d. being
4. Has your brother .... a hurricane or a flood ?
   a. see b. seeing c. saw d. seen

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a prize – Hala – for – photos – won – her.

....

2. storm-chasers – His – are – parents – brave.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Storm-chasers"

Guiding elements.

- travel
- countries
- extreme weather
- take photos

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 5

▸ Volcanoes



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

island	جزيرة	lava	حمم بركانية
mud flow	تدفق الطين	ash	رماد
poem	قصيدة	soil	تربة
smoke	دخان		

• Extra vocabulary

pretty	جميل	the helping hand	يد العون	material	مادة خام
higher	أعلى	fire	نار / حريق	mine	منجم
soft	لين - رخو				

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
rhyme	يتناغم	rhymed	compare	يقارن	compared
fill	يملأ	filled	decide	يقرر	decided
mix	يختلط	mixed	check	يتحقق - يراجع	checked
thank	يشكر	thanked	add	يضيف	added
erupt	يثور / ينفجر (البركان)	erupted	burn	يحرق	burnt/burned

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• come out of	يخرج من	• the top part of	الجزء العلوي من
• move down	يتحرك لأسفل	• mix with	يمزج مع / يختلط مع

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
erupt	when volcanoes erupt, fire and rocks come out of the top عندما يثور البركان تخرج نيران وصخور من قمة (فوهة) البركان
soil	is the top part of the Earth in which plants grow الجزء العلوي من الأرض حيث تنمو النباتات

lava	is hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes صخور سائلة ساخنة تخرج من البراكين
mud flow	is soft, wet material that moves down mountains المادة اللينة الرطبة التي تنزل من الجبال
ash	is something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning شيء ما لين ولونه رمادي تجده عندما يتوقف الحريق

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

- ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Volcanoes of Java

Let me take you to the **pretty island**[1] of Java,
Where almost everything is made of lava!
It comes from Java's **volcanoes**[2],
Which look down on the villages below.
The names of the volcanoes are :
Salak, Guntur, Karaha, Malabar ...
But there are another thirty-nine,
You can find their names online!
When they erupt, there's **ash**[3] and fire,
Smoke fills the air, going higher and higher,
The island people have to go away,
To a safe place where they can stay.
The lava and ash mix with mud flows,
This makes **soil**[4] where good food grows,
When the farmers come back to the **land**[5] ,
They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.



[1] جزيرة
[2] براكين
[3] رماد
[4] تربة
[5] أرض

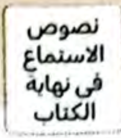
Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معاني الكلمات.

Learn 1. The word **below** in the text is the opposite of ....
a. in b. above c. between d. next

Practice 2. The underlined word **pretty** means ....
a. ugly b. boring c. beautiful d. short



General Exercises on Lesson 5



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. .... are natural wonders.
   a. Volcanoes b. Accidents c. Cars d. Glasses
2. When volcanoes erupt, there is .... and fire.
   a. ash b. rain c. food d. money
3. People have to .... to stay safe.
   a. sleep b. die c. run away d. lie
4. When lava and ash mix with mud, this makes good ....
   a. oil b. soil c. water d. gas

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the most important invention ?

....

2. What can we do with the mobile phone ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

dangerous – burn – asleep – lava – volcanoes

Volcanoes are mountains that can erupt. When they erupt, they give out hot rocks and (1) .... Lava is melted rocks that flows like a river. It can (2) .... trees and houses. Sometimes, volcanoes are not active and do not erupt for a long time. But sometimes, they are active and very (3) .... People who live near (4) .... have to be careful and watch for signs of an eruption.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Volcanoes have different kinds of materials. Magma is the liquid found inside the volcano. When this comes out, or erupts, it is called lava. It is red, orange, or white depending on its temperature. Lava exposed to the air cools to a deep black color. The tiny hard pieces of rock that erupt are called ash. Ash clouds can destroy a whole town. Gases from eruptions can keep sunlight from reaching the earth and darken the sky for years. Volcanoes also build up new islands and mountains and make the soil a good place for crops to grow.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. When magma comes out of a volcano, it is called ....
   a. ash b. rock c. lava d. liquid

2. When lava cools down, its color becomes ....

a. white b. red c. orange d. black

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What happens when gases erupt into the sky ?

....

4. Why are volcanoes good for farming ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Have you .... been to Sudan ?

a. never b. ever c. ago d. once

2. Has Sara visited Java ? No, she ....

a. haven't b. have c. hasn't d. doesn't

3. She has .... an amazing place.

a. seen b. saw c. see d. sees

4. Ali and Omar .... traveled to Aswan.

a. do b. have c. has d. does

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. soil – the fertile – in – Plants – well – grow.

....

2. would – live on – I – to – like – Java.

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The volcanoes of Java"

Guiding elements :

- pretty island
- ash
- fire
- lava
- soil

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 6

▸ Writing a description



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

rainbow	قوس قزح	formations	تكوينات
arch	قوس	brochure	نشرة - منشور
pinnacle	قمة صخرية		

• Extra vocabulary

fall	فصل الخريف	description	وصف	limestone	حجر جيرى
national	وطنى - قومى	location	موقع	geological	جيولوجى
sandstone	حجررملى	features	ملامح - سمات	Lake Powell	بحيرة "باول"

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
introduce	يقدم	introduced	forget	ينسى	forgot
describe	يصف	described	write	يكتب	wrote

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Rainbow Bridge National Monument	arches	- Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world.
	sandstone	- It's made of red and brown sandstone.
	eroded a hole	- A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many years.
The Pinnacles	formations	- The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations.
	white rocks	- The Pinnacles are a group of tall white rocks in Nambung National Park.
	limestone	- The Pinnacles made of limestone.

II Listening and Reading

☆ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Rainbow Bridge National Monument - Utah, USA



Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years. Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910.

If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is in a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat!

The Pinnacles



The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone which the rain and wind have eroded into different shapes. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. If you want to visit the Pinnacles, the best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. At these times, the sun makes them look orange against the yellow sand dunes of the desert. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the picture, read the text and identify.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يقرأ النص ويتعرف.



Writing a description

1 How to write a description of a geological formation

كيفية كتابة وصف للتكوين الجيولوجى.

A. – Decide which formation you want to write about.

– حدد التكوين الذى تريد الكتابة عنه.

– I want to write about .... in ....

B. Do research about geological feature and make notes. Find or draw a picture of it.

– قم بالبحث عن الملامح الجيولوجية وقم بتدوين الملاحظات. ابحث عن أو ارسم صورة له.

C. Write your description for the brochure. – اكتب وصفك للكتيب.

2 Tips to write a description of a geological formation

نصائح لكتابة وصف لتكوين جيولوجى.

– Introduce the topic, start the first sentence with the name of your geological formation.

– لتقديم الموضوع، ابدأ الجملة الأولى باسم التكوين الجيولوجى الخاص بك.

– Write why this geological formation is important or special in the same sentence. • اكتب لماذا هذا التكوين الجيولوجى مهم أو خاص فى نفس الجملة.

– Next, include the location and age of the formation.

– بعد ذلك، قم بإضافة موقع وعمر التكوين.

– Explain how it was formed. – اشرح كيف تم تشكيلها.

– Describe what it looks like and how big it is. – صف شكلها وحجمها.

– Add extra, interesting information about it.

– أضف معلومات إضافية ومثيرة للاهتمام حول هذا الموضوع.

– Tell people how they can visit it. • أخبر الناس كيف يمكنهم زيارته.

• Help your child how to write a description of geological formation. - ساعد طفلك أن يكتب وصف التكوين الجيولوجى.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Rainbow .... is one of the largest natural arches.
   a. Highway b. Metro c. Bridge d. Lift
2. It is about 200 million years ....
   a. old b. tall c. wide d. long
3. It is made of red and brown ....
   a. plastic b. wood c. glass d. sandstone
4. Rainbow Bridge has become a National .... since 1910.
   a. Monument b. Day c. Sport d. Hobby

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is the Valley of the Kings ?

....

2. Is the Valley of the Kings an important monument ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

boat – hole – spring – arch – world

Rainbow Bridge is a natural arch on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. A river eroded a (1) .... in the sandstone and has formed the (2) .... over many years. The Rainbow Bridge is a National Monument. If you want to visit it, you have to take a (3) .... or ride a horse. You should visit it in the (4) .... or in the fall.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone which the rain and wind have eroded into different shapes. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high.

If you want to visit the Pinnacles, the best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon.

At these times, the sun makes them look orange against the yellow sand dunes of the desert. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "full of" is the opposite of ....

   a. sunny   b. empty   c. angry   d. cloudy

2. Pinnacles are a group of tall white ....

   a. clouds   b. arches   c. storms   d. rocks

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

   ....

4. What's the best time of year to see Pinnacles ?

   ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a – Rainbow – is – Bridge – arch – natural.

   ....

2. forget – to – a bottle – take – of water – Don't.

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Rainbow Bridge"

Guiding elements :

Location	Lake Powell in Utah
Age	200 million years
Made of	red and brown sandstone
Eroded by	a river
How to get there	take a boat, ride a horse

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 7

▶ Story : A Balloon Ride



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

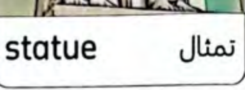

flame لهب


air balloon منطاد هوائي


ribbon شريطة


pilot طيار


rope حبل



statue تمثال


silver فضة

• Extra vocabulary

festival	احتفال	diary	مفكرة يومية	burning	محترق
flight	رحلة طيران	gentle	لطيف	tiny	ضئيل
material	مادة خام	sandy	رملي	perfect	ملائم / مثالي
empty	فارغ	ride	جولة - يركب	palm trees	شجر النخيل

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
drop	يسقط - يلقي	dropped
laugh	يضحك	laughed
touch	يلمس	touched

Irregular

Present		Past
blow	يهب (الرياح)	blew
shine	تشرق (الشمس)	shone
light	يضئ	lit

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- fell out of سقط من
- pick up يلتقط
- give ... back يعيد
- point to يشير إلى
- fly over يُحلق فوق
- walk away يرحل / يبتعد

- **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
ribbon	a long, soft piece of a material قطعة طويلة وناعمة من مادة ما
gentle	slow, not fast or extreme بطيء، ليس سريعًا أو شديدًا
basket	people use this to carry things, and a big one can carry people يستخدم الناس هذا لحمل الأشياء، ويمكن لسلة كبيرة أن تحمل الناس
flame	the burning gas that you see in a fire الغاز المحترق الذي تراه في النار
light / lit	make/made something start to burn يجعل / جعل شئ ما يحترق



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. He flies the airplane. He's a ....
   a. teacher b. pilot c. baker d. sailor
2. Dad has got tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon ....
   a. match b. festival c. book d. game
3. The wind was .... It wasn't strong.
   a. heavy b. stormy c. dangerous d. gentle

II Listening and Reading

 **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

The beginning

"Come inside, Mariam," said Mom.
"It's late." Mariam was in the garden.

She loved watching the birds. She thought about the places they visited and the things they saw. "I would love to fly," she said. "Like a bird?" Mom laughed. "You are funny!"

Mariam's dad came home. He was happy. "Look! I've got tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival! We'll see balloons in lots of colors."

Mariam was very excited. All week, she thought about the festival.

• Help your child read the text and learn. • ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم.

The Middle

Finally, the day arrived. Mariam was watching everything when she saw a tall man. He had a special coat and a hat on his head. He was a hot air balloon pilot! As he walked away, a book fell out of his bag. He didn't know. Mariam ran to pick it up.

"Look, Mom!" she said. "It's a book about hot air balloon flights."

"Oh no!" said Mom. "It's his diary! It's about everywhere he's been."

"We must give it back!" said Mariam. Together they ran until they found the man.

"Hello! Did you drop this book?" said Mariam's dad.

"Thank you!" the man said. "This book is important. I write everywhere that I have traveled to in the balloon! I want to thank you - would you like to have a ride?" He pointed to a beautiful balloon.

"Yes, please!" they said.

"It's perfect weather today, with no rain and a gentle wind," he said.

They followed him to the balloon and climbed into the basket. Mariam watched as he lit the flame.

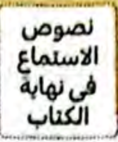
As the air inside the balloon got hot, he dropped the rope and the balloon slowly climbed into the air.

The End

Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. The wind blew them gently through the clear blue sky. They saw green fields and sandy deserts, palm trees, dunes, and mountains. They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples. The Nile looked like a silver ribbon. Everything was quiet, and the houses, cars, and boats were tiny. The sun shone and it felt like they could touch the clouds.

"Now I know what it's like to be a bird!" said Mariam.

General Exercises on Lesson 7



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Yassin is a hot air balloon ....

a. pilot b. teacher c. diver d. doctor

2. A .... fell out of Yassin's bag.

a. mobile b. book c. hat d. pencil

3. The book was about hot air balloon ....

a. films b. islands c. markets d. flights

4. A young girl gave the book to Yassin and he .... her.

a. hit b. lost c. thanked d. attached

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Salma go ?

....

2. What did Salma see ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

festival – photograph – excited – tickets – foot

Mariam loved watching animals. She wanted to see what they see. One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had (1) .... for the Luxor airplane festival. Mariam was very (2) .... When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the (3) .... Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall woman. Something fell, it was a (4) .... Mariam picked it up because she wanted to give it back.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. you – a ride – Would – to have – like ?

....

2. a hot – pilot – My brother – air – is – balloon.

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Transport is the movement of people or goods from one place to another. There are many different **means** of transport, such as cars, buses, trains, planes, boats, bikes and walking. The most important means of transport depends on the distance, time, cost and importance of the trip. For short

distances, walking or biking may be the best option. For longer distances, cars or buses may be more suitable. For very long distances, planes or boats may be necessary. Transport is essential for our daily lives, as it allows us to travel, work, study and explore the world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "<u>means</u>" here has the same meaning as ....

a. ways b. drivers c. crops d. food

2. Transport is .... for our daily lives.

a. unknown b. unimportant c. bad d. essential

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

....

4. What are the best options for longer distances ?

....

• **6** Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A balloon ride"

Guiding elements :

• excited • festival • air • fields

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمات ، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخمن المعنى.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago, Kamal's parents said, "You can come with us when we next go away for work. Kamal was very **excited** because his parents were storm-chasers! They get very close to the **extreme** weather event to study it.



1. The underlined word "**excited**" in the text means ....
   a. sad b. (happy) c. angry d. bad
2. The underlined word "**extreme**" in the text means that the weather is very ....
   a. cool b. nice c. (bad) d. sunny

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

The Sahara Desert is the **largest** hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but are cold deserts). It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live there.

1. The word "......................" in the text is the opposite of the word "wet".
   a. cold b. dry c. hot d. big
2. The underlined word "**largest**" has the same meaning as ....
   a. smallest b. biggest c. nearest d. shortest

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (الصحراء الكبرى) و (عجائب من صنع الانسان فى قارة افريقيا) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
The Sahara Desert	Write the meaning : دول .... جاف .... حار .... كثبان .... نباتات .... تغطى	Complete the sentences : 1. The Sahara Desert is the largest .... desert in the world. 2. It covers eleven .... 3. It is a very .... place. 4. The sand .... can be about 180 meters high.	Write a paragraph using the sentences : "The Sahara Desert" ....
Man-made wonders of Africa	اهرامات .... بقايا / حطام .... لا يصدق .... كهف .... رسومات .... أعمدة	1. People in Africa have made many .... things. 2. People come from all over the world to visit the .... of Giza. 3. In Zimbabwe, there are the .... of Great Zimbabwe. 4. In North Africa, there are .... *on rocks and in caves.*	Write an email using the sentences : "Man-made wonders of Africa" ....





Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Pinnacles	geological	The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia.
	white rocks	They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park.
	limestone	The Pinnacles are made of white limestone.
	wind - rain	The rain and wind have eroded this limestone into different shapes.
Man-made wonders of Africa	wonders	The Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx and the temples of Abu Simbel are man-made wonders in Egypt.
	visit - history	People come from all over the world to visit the Pyramids.
	stone - columns	The Afrikaans language Monument is made of stone columns.
	language - developed	The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa.
	words	The Afrikaans language has words from lots of different countries.
The Sahara Desert	largest - desert	The Sahara Desert the largest hot desert in the world.
	cover	It covers eleven countries.
	dry - place	It's a very dry place.
	plants - live	Some plants and animals live in the Sahara Desert.
Victoria Falls	enormous	It's an enormous waterfall.
	Zambezi	It's on the Zambezi River.
	wide - high	It's wide and very high.
	water - noise	When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise.



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢١ جملة).

1 Rainbow Bridge National Monument

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world [1]. It is made of red and brown sandstone[2]. A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years[3]. Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910[4]. If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it[5].

2 The Ngorongoro Crater

The Ngorongoro Crater is in Tanzania[6]. It is the largest volcanic crater in the world[7]. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago[8]. There are wetlands and forests inside the crater[9]. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there[10].

3 Mount Kilimanjaro

Mount Kilimanjaro is one of the natural wonders of Africa[11]. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes[12]. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa[13]. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult[14]. The mountain is very big [15]. It has lots of different ecosystems[16] .

4 Man-made wonders of Egypt

The natural world in Africa is beautiful[17]. People in this continent have made many incredible things, too[18]. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt; the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings[19]. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history[20]. But there's a lot more to see in Africa[21].

Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

volcano	بركان	arch	قوس
valley	وادى	bridge	كوبرى
ash	رماد	crater	فوهة بركان
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	waterfall	شلال
archaeologist	عالم آثار	natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية
ruins	بقايا / أطلال	tropical	استوائى
dust storm	عاصفة ترابية	gentle	لطيف
flood	فيضان	ribbon	شريط
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية		
soil	تربة		

Language

A. The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative : **Subject + inf. + (d - ed - ied)** / التصريف الثانى للفعل ....

ex. - I studied hard. - He went to the zoo yesterday.

Negative : **Subject + didn't + inf. ....**

ex. - He didn't eat unhealthy food.

Questions
- **Did + subject + inf. ..... ?**
- **Wh- words + did + subject + inf. ..... ?**

ex. - Did you drop this book ? - What did you do ?

B. The Present Perfect Tense

Affirmative : **Subject + have ('ve) / has ('s) + p.p. ....**

ex. - I've eaten ice cream.

Negative : **Subject + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ....**

ex. - He hasn't visited his aunt.

Questions
- **Have / Has + subject + p.p. ..... ?**
- **Wh- words + have / has + subject + p.p. ..... ?**

ex. • Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?
- Yes, I have. – No, I haven't.

• Where has he gone ? - He has gone to London.

Test 3 on Unit 2

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.
. التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Rwanda is a beautiful country in ....
   a. Africa b. Asia c. Australia d. Europe
2. Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest ....
   a. study b. adventure c. text d. project
3. The bridge was .... in 2010.
   a. built b. broken c. repaired d. damaged
4. The bridge is in the highest part of the ....
   a. sky b. island c. ground d. trees

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the most comfortable means of transport?

....

2. Have you used a hot air balloon before?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

canyon – waterfall – natural – noise – storm

Africa has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Victoria Falls is one of the (1).......................... wonders. This enormous (2).......................... is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big (3).......................... which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of (4).......................... !

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Volcanoes look like mountains. Volcanoes can be called fire mountains. There are a lot of volcanoes in the world. Some are sleeping and some are awake. When the volcano is awake, we say the volcano is active. This means hot rocks comes out of the top. This can happen fast or slowly. When the rock is very hot, it is called lava. This rock or lava moves like slow water. It can burn trees, forests and even houses. Scientists try to study volcanoes to know when a volcano erupts. This is important to help people be safe.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is ....
   a. wonders b. storm-chasers c. volcanoes d. monuments

2. Scientists try to know when a volcano ....

a. travels b. erupts c. melts d. dies

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do volcanoes look like ?

....

4. Why do you think lava is dangerous ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. There are acacia trees in the desert.		
2. Wadi of the Gazelles is the perfect place for the gazelles.		
3. The turtle was yellow.		
4. Donga lives in the mangrove forest.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Gazelles can't .... fast in the sand.
2. The turtle's eggs were in the ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hala has .... her sandwiches.

a. eat b. ate c. eaten d. eating

2. We .... finished our homework yet.

a. have b. has c. haven't d. hasn't

3. Last week, I .... on a camel.

a. have ridden b. ride c. rides d. rode

4. Have you ever .... a new mobile ?

a. buy b. buying c. buys d. bought

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the world – the – Sahara Desert – desert – largest – in - is.

....

2. plants – animals – and – Do – here – live ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The Pinnacles

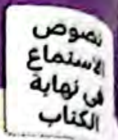
Guiding elements :

- geological
- limestone
- tall
- eroded
- National Park

Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

(Menoufia – Birket El Sabaa 2023)

1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of .... volcanoes.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five
2. The volcanoes haven't erupted for the thousands of ....
   a. days b. weeks c. months d. years
3. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in ....
   a. Africa b. Asia c. Europe d. America
4. At the top of Kilimanjaro, there is .... and ice.
   a. plant b. water c. sand d. snow

2 Listen and answer the questions.

(Giza - October 2023)

1. What are the most famous man-made wonders in Egypt ?

....

2. Why do tourists come from all over the world ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

happy – hot – animals – eleven – dunes

The Sahara Desert is in Africa. The Sahara Desert is the largest (1)........................ desert in the world. It covers (2)........................ countries. There are many sand (3)........................ Although it's a hot and dry place, some (4)........................ and plants live here. The plants and animals that live in the desert don't need much water.

(Sharkia - 10th Ramadan 2023)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Several people prefer to live in towns and big cities like Cairo and Alexandria. They are attracted by their lights, tall buildings and clubs. Many people leave their villages and live in towns where the chances of work are found. They work in big shops and restaurants to get much money. Those people have forgotten that they are in need of the village and crops, vegetables and fruits. Without the farmer, people would suffer much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Clubs and tall buildings are found in a ....
   a. village b. city c. field d. farm
2. People can go to the .... to have a meal.
   a. cinema b. schools c. bakery d. restaurant

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do several people prefer to live in big cities?

....

4. Where do we get crops?

....

(Giza - El-Haram 2023)

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari is a brave and curious gazelle.		
2. Gazelles' favorite food is the mangrove.		
3. The turtle lives in Lake Nasser.		
4. Gebel Elba is the home of gazelles.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari ran north, south, east and west to ....
2. Subira showed Jubari which plants to .... *(Gharbia - Basyon 2023)*

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Did she .... to the park four days ago? *(Minia - Matai 2023)*
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
2. Waleed has .... by bus. *(Cairo - El-Khalefa 2023)*
   a. travel b. travels c. traveling d. traveled
3. I .... finished my homework yet. *(Qalyubia - Benha 2023)*
   a. won't b. hasn't c. don't d. haven't
4. They have .... animals at the zoo. *(Cairo - El-Marg 2023)*
   a. saw b. see c. seen d. sees

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. continent – The – African – place - is – an amazing. *(Luxor - Esna 2023)*

....

2. made - volcanoes - is – Mount Kilimanjaro – three - of. *(Giza - Dokki 2023)*

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The Ngorongoro Crater

Guiding elements:

- largest
- erupt
- wetlands
- forests
- animals

....

....

(Ismailia - Fayed 2023)

Review on Units 1 & 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات (١، ٢)

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

ecosystem	نظام بيئي	storm	عاصفة
grassland	أرض عشبية / مرعى	insects	حشرات
forest	غابة	coast	ساحل
rainforests	غابات مطيرة	photographer	مصور
marine	بحري	seeds	بذور
salt water	ماء مالح	canopy	الطبقة العليا من الغابة
freshwater	ماء عذب	wildlife	حياة برية
desert	صحراء	hummingbird	طائر طنان النحل
community	مجتمع	lizard	سحلية
living things	كائنات حية	kingfisher	طائر الرفراف
non-living things	كائنات غير حية	pollen	حبوب لقاح
species	أنواع / فصائل	worm	دودة
diseases = illnesses	أمراض	dugongs	بقر البحر (حيوانات الأطوم)
trip	رحلة قصيرة	survive	ينجو

Unit 2

volcano	بركان	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
crater	فوهة بركان	hurricane	إعصار
erupt	يثور (البركان)	extreme weather	طقس قاسي
wetland	أرض رطبة	floods	فيضانات
canyon	أخدود	snow	ثلج
valley	وادي	forecast	تنبؤ - يتنبأ
erode	ينحت	event	حدث
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	lava	حمم بركانية
natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية	soil	تربة زراعية
waterfall	شلال	mud flow	تدفق الطين
lake	بحيرة	island	جزيرة
storm-chasers	مطاردي العواصف	ash	رماد
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	smoke	دخان

II Language

Unit 1

A. Relative clauses:

(who) → for people (الذى) ← للأشخاص

- This is the doctor who helps sick people.

(which) → for things (الذى) ← لغير العاقل

- The coat which I bought is too big.

(where) → for places (حيث) ← للأماكن

- Cairo is the city where I live.

B. Linking words:

(and) → Fish, chicken, and beans are all healthy.

(but) → I like apples, but I don't like oranges.

(because) → I went to the doctor because I was sick.

(so) → He wants to be fit, so he exercises regularly.

Unit 2

The Present Perfect Tense

Affirmative

Subject + have ('ve) / has ('s) + p.p. ....

ex. - I've eaten ice cream.

Negative

Subject + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ....

ex. - He hasn't visited his aunt.

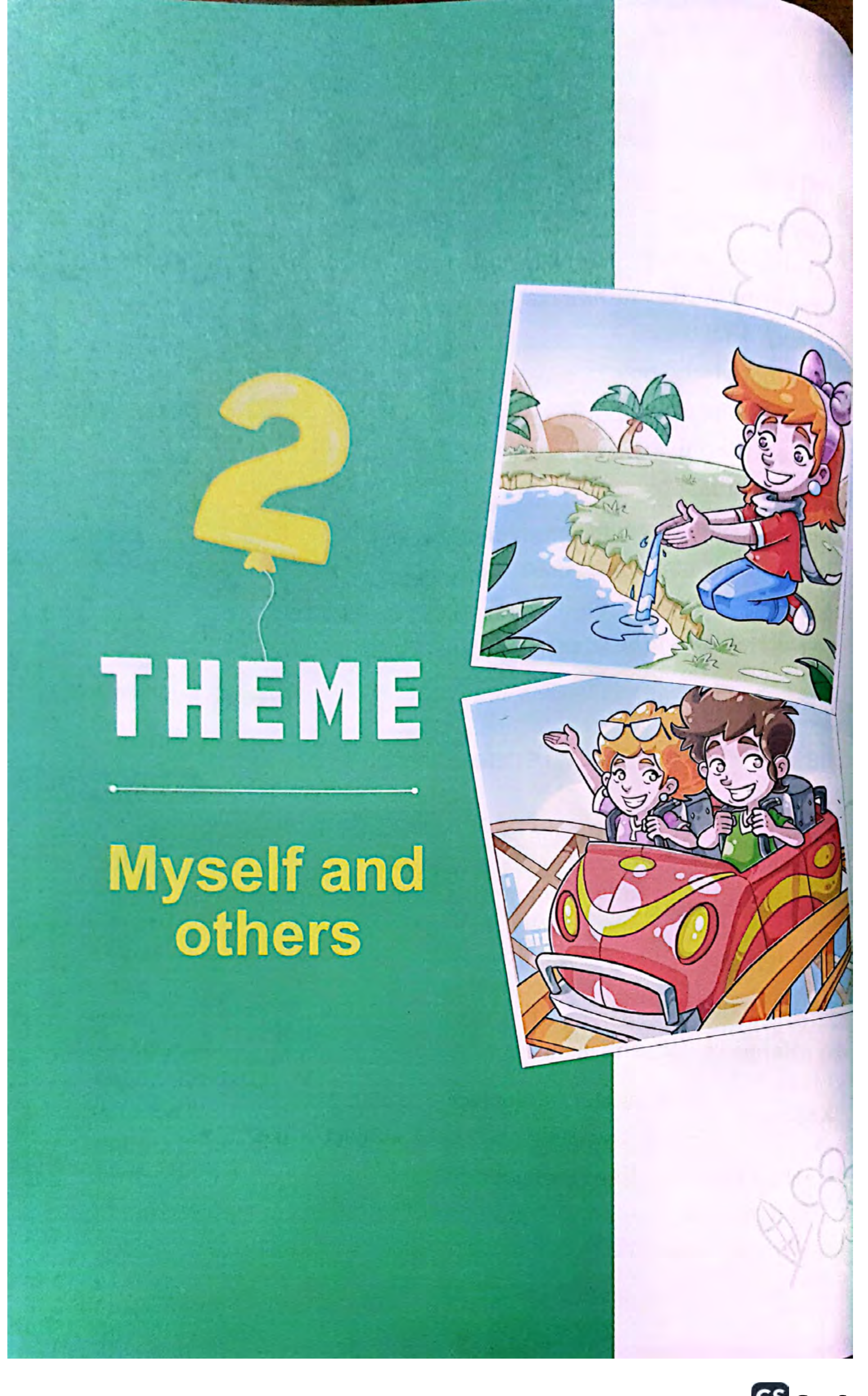
Questions

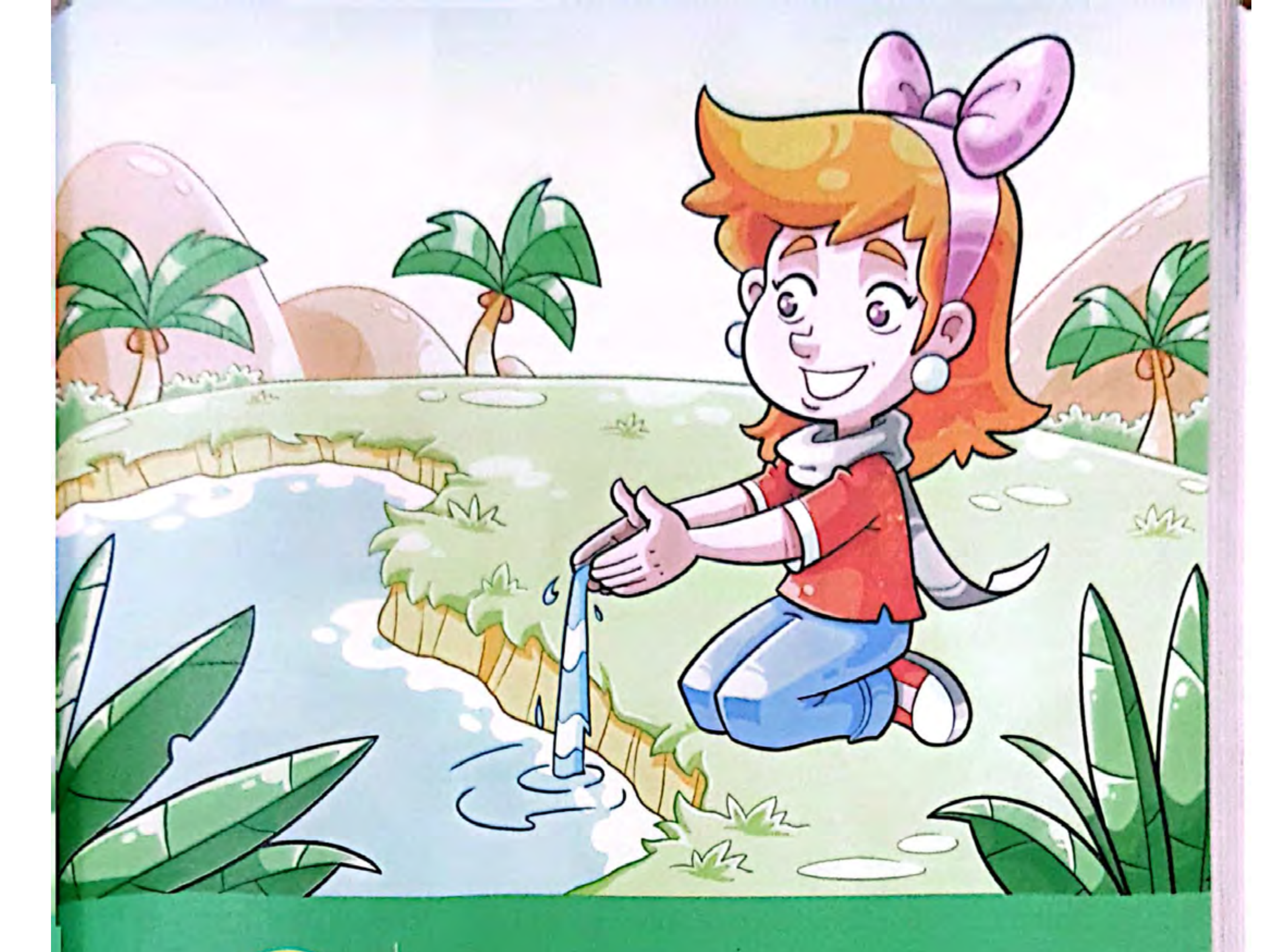
- **Have / Has + subject + p.p. ...... ?**
- **Wh- words + have / has + subject + p.p. ...... ?**

ex. • Have they ever visited the Pyramids?

- Yes, they have. - No, they haven't.

• Where has he gone? - He has gone to London.


2
THEME
Myself and others



Unit 3 How we use our world

كيف نستخدم عالمنا

Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- talk about natural resources, and renewable and non-renewable resources.
  - أتحدث عن الموارد الطبيعية والموارد المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
- understand a play about finding dinosaur bones.
  - أفهم مسرحية عن العثور على عظام الديناصور.
- make sentences and questions using the second conditional.
  - أكون جمل وأسئلة باستخدام الحالة الشرطية الثانية.
- describe resources in ancient Egypt and do a quiz.
  - أصف الموارد فى مصر القديمة وأقوم باختبار.
- understand a story about a blind girl and describe the physical properties of objects.
  - أفهم قصة عن فتاة كفيفة وأصف الخصائص الفيزيائية للأشياء.
- understand a description of a science experiment.
  - أفهم وصف تجارب علمية.
- write a report about a visit to a place and develop a topic using facts, definitions, and details.
  - أكتب تقرير عن زيارة إلى مكان ما وتطوير موضوع باستخدام الحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.
- understand a story about an experiment.
  - أفهم قصة عن تجربة.
- use reported speech. - أستخدم الكلام غير المباشر.

Lesson

1

What can we do with natural resources?

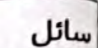


I Vocabulary

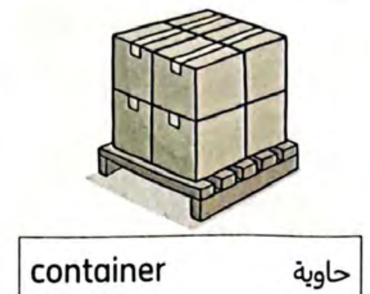
Key vocabulary


raw materials مواد خام


solid صلب



liquid سائل


steam بخار


container حاوية


coal فحم


gold ذهب


stone حجر

Extra vocabulary

solar energy	طاقة شمسية	fixed shape	شكل ثابت
renewable	متجدد	pale	شاحب - باهت
non-renewable	غير متجدد	science class	حصة علوم
Sukari gold mine	منجم السكرى للذهب	freezer	مجمد
mine	منجم	sign	لافتة - علامة
electricity	كهرباء	state	حالة
fossil fuel	وقود حفرى	gas	غاز
natural resources	مصادر طبيعية		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
flow	يتدفق	flowed	give	يعطي	gave
boil	يغلي	boiled	freeze	يتجمد	froze
melt	يذوب / ينصهر	melted	mean	يعني-يقصد	meant
heat	يسخن	heated	become	يصبح	became
pour	يسكب / يصب	poured	burn	يحرق - يحترق	burned/burnt

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get more of	يحصل على المزيد من	pick up	يلتقط
make electricity	يولد الكهرباء	turn to	يتحول إلى

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Natural resources	raw materials	Natural resources are raw materials that we get from nature.
	need	We use natural resources to make the things we need.
	solar energy	The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.
	renewable	Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable.
	get more	Renewable energy means that we can get more of the resource after we use it.
States of water	steam	If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas.
	freeze	If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid.
	melt	When ice melts, it becomes a liquid.

• **Did you know ?** • هل تعلم ؟

• The highest waterfall in the world is Angel Falls in Venezuela, which is about 1,000 meters high.

• أعلى شلال فى العالم هو شلالات أنجيل فى فنزويلا حيث يبلغ ارتفاعه حوالى ١٠٠٠ متر.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... resources are materials from nature.
   a. Electric b. Natural c. Soil d. Plastic
2. Water is a ....
   a. solid b. gas c. liquid d. hard
3. .... fuels are not renewable.
   a. Fossil b. Solar c. Wind d. Water
4. When ice .... , it becomes a liquid.
   a. freezes b. melts c. snows d. collects
5. The sun gives us .... energy.
   a. fossil b. solar c. water d. wind

II Listening and Reading



Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

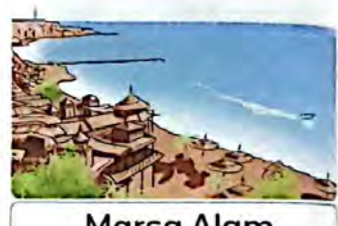
Salma's journey to Marsa Alam

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine.

"What's a mine, mom?" she asks.

"It's a place where we get raw materials[1] from the ground, like gold and coal."

"Are raw materials the same as natural resources?" asks Salma.



Marsa Alam

"Yes, usually," says Mom. "Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity."

"Our teacher says that coal is non-renewable, is that right?"

[1] مواد خام

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

-ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

"Yes," says Mom. "Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels[2] such as coal and gas, we can't use them again."

"What's the difference between coal and gas?" asks Salma.

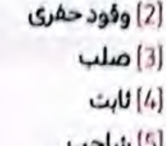
"Coal is a solid[3]," says Mom. "You can pick up a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed[4] shape. You can't usually see gases, although some have a pale[5] color. Gases move and change shape."

"What about liquids, Mom?"

"Liquids don't have a fixed shape. You can't pick up a liquid which isn't in a container. Liquids can flow - for example, you can pour water into a cup."

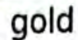
"Did you know that some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state[6] to another?" says Dad. "If you boil[7] liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas. If you freeze[8] liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts[9], it becomes a liquid again!"

"Yes, we learned that at school!" says Salma. "But I understand it better now. Thanks, Mom and Dad!"



(2) وقود حفري
(3) صلب
(4) ثابت
(5) شاحب
(6) حالة
(7) يغلي
(8) يتجمد
(9) ينصهر





gold



steam

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

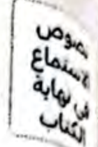
In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it boiled. Some of the water turned to steam. Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water froze and turned to ice.



• Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Coal is a ....
   a. solid b. liquid c. ice d. gas
2. A solid object has a fixed ....
   a. color b. square c. place d. shape
3. We can't usually see ....
   a. ice b. water c. gases d. coal
4. Gases .... and change shape.
   a. sell b. move c. see d. pick

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who put some water in a pan?

....

2. What happened when we put the water in a freezer?

....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Natural resources are raw materials that we get from nature. Natural resources include soil and wood. We use natural resources to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity. Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable. Renewable energy means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. Some natural resources are non-renewable.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The main idea of the text is ".................... ".
   a. Future b. Electricity c. Healthy food d. Natural resources
2. Solar energy is ....
   a. non-renewable b. renewable c. nature d. man-made

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Mention two natural resources in the text.

....

4. Why is the sun a natural resource?

....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

need - rocks - wood - solar - natural

Natural resources are things we can use from nature. Wood and soil are (1) .... resources. We use them to make the things we (2).................. . For example, we use (3).................. to make tables and stone to build houses.

The sun is a natural resource because it gives us (4).................. energy to make electricity. Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable. This means that we can get more of the resources naturally after we use it.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Marsa Alam - We - went to - for - a holiday.

....

2. is - liquid - Water - a.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Natural resources"

Guiding elements :

- raw materials
- wood
- non-renewable
- stone

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

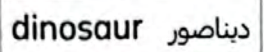


Lesson 2  Language

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary





dinosaur ديناصور



shovel مجرفة



gazelle غزالة



skeleton هيكل عظمي

• Extra vocabulary

Egyptian Geological Museum	المتحف الجيولوجي المصري	fire service	خدمة الإطفاء
		mountain	جبل
archaeologist	عالم آثار	factory	مصنع
bone	عظمة	heavy	ثقيل
normal	طبيعي	expert	خبير
soon	قريبًا	real	حقيقي

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	take	يأخذ	took
plan	يخطط	planned	dig	يحفر	dug

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the sign	على اللافتة	I think so!	أعتقد ذلك!
for a day	لمدة يوم	interested in	مهتم بـ
on vacation	في إجازة	go into	يذهب نحو
look for	يبحث عن	the same as	مثل



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... died out millions of years ago.
   a. Elephants   b. Dinosaurs   c. Lions   d. Eagles
2. He used a .... to dig a hole.
   a. knife   b. spoon   c. fork   d. shovel
3. All the bones in our bodies are called ....
   a. hearts   b. skeleton   c. lungs   d. blood
4. He is a /an .... in teaching. He knows so much.
   a. engineer   b. expert   c. doctor   d. nurse
5. .... live in desert.
   a. Fish   b. Sharks   c. Gazelles   d. Whales



☆ **Listen, read and learn.** استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

Pop Quiz
• ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب
• تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

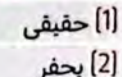
Scene 1 : Inside a room in Grandpa's house



What are you doing tomorrow, children? ماذا ستفعلون غدًا أيها الأطفال؟



Tarek and I are going into the mountains with Dad.
أنا وطارق سنذهب إلى الجبال مع أبي.



[1] حقيقي
[2] يحفر
[3] مجرفة



Really? When I was a boy, people told me that there were dinosaur bones in the mountains.
حقًا؟ عندما كنت صبيًا، أخبرني الناس أن هناك عظام ديناصور في الجبال.



Real[1] dinosaur bones? عظام ديناصور حقيقية؟





I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was digging[2] a hole there and he found some bones.
أعتقد ذلك. لم أراهم قط، لكن صديقي علي كان يحفر حفرة هناك ووجد بعض العظام.



Wow! Donia, let's take a shovel[3] when we go to the mountains. We might find dinosaur bones too!
واو! لنأخذ مجرفة عندما نذهب إلى الجبال يا دنيا. ربما نجد عظام ديناصور أيضًا!

Scene 2 : In the car



What would you do if we found dinosaur bones in the mountains, Donia?

ماذا ستفعلين لو وجدنا عظام ديناصور في الجبال يا دنيا ؟



If we found dinosaur bones, I would take them home. If there were a lot of dinosaur bones, I would give one to Grandpa. He's very interested in dinosaurs!

إذا وجدنا عظام الديناصورات، فسوف أخذها إلى المنزل. إذا كان هناك الكثير من عظام الديناصورات، فسأعطي واحدة للجد. إنه مهتم جدًا بالديناصورات !

[4] خبير
[5] عظمة



Hmm. I don't know. I think we should call an expert[4]. If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

همم. لا أعرف. أعتقد أننا يجب أن ندعو خبير. إذا وجدت عظام ديناصور، فسأتصل بالمتحف وأخبرهم.



That's a good idea. And if the archaeologists from the museum came, maybe they would find a whole dinosaur skeleton.

إنها فكرة جيدة. وإذا جاء علماء الآثار من المتحف، فربما يجدون هيكلًا عظميًا كاملًا للديناصور.



And if the skeleton went in the museum, they would put our names on the sign. It would say "Found by Donia and Tarek."

وإذا أُخذ الهيكل العظمى إلى المتحف، فسيضعون أسمائنا على اللافتة. سيكتب "وجده دنيا وطارق."



Wow! That's cool.

واو ! هذا رائع.

Scene 3 : In the mountains



Here's the shovel. Let's start digging.

ها هى المجرفة. لنبدأ الحفر.

Tarek digs in the ground.

طارق يحفر في الأرض.



Look! I've found a bone, Donia! Is it a dinosaur bone[5]?

انظرى ! لقد وجدت عظمة ، يا دنيا ! هل هى عظمة ديناصور ؟



I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. They're just animal bones... Maybe a goat or a gazelle.

لا أعتقد إنها ثقيلة بما يكفى لتكون عظام ديناصور. إنها مجرد عظام حيوانات. ربما عنزة أو غزالة.



You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real life. Only photos!

أنت على حق. لم أر قط عظمة ديناصور في الحياة الحقيقية. رأيتها في الصور فقط !



Well, why don't we visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo soon ?

حسنًا، لماذا لا نزور متحف الجيولوجيا المصرية في القاهرة قريبًا ؟



If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

إذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف، فسنرى هياكل عظمية للديناصور.



If we see real dinosaur skeletons, we'll know what to look for next time. Can we go tomorrow, Dad?

إذا رأينا هياكل عظمية حقيقية للديناصورات، فسنعرف ما الذى نبحث عنه فى المرة القادمة. هل يمكننا الذهاب غدا يا أبى؟

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار

Learn 1. What did the children find?
- They found some animal bones.

Practice 2. What did the children decide to look for?

....

III Language

1 First conditional (If) :
الحالة الشرطية الأولى [If] :

▶ Describe events which will probably happen in the future.

◀ تستخدم لوصف الاحداث المحتمل أن تقع فى المستقبل.

أداة الشرط	جملة الشرط	جملة جواب الشرط
If لو / إذا	subject + present simple,	subject + will('ll) / won't + inf.

ex. If we go to the museum, we'll see big dinosaur skeletons.

2 Second conditional (If) :
الحالة الشرطية الثانية [If] :

▶ Describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

◀ تستخدم لوصف احداث تخيلية لكن غير محتمل حدوثها الآن ومستقبلاً.

أداة الشرط	جملة الشرط	جملة جواب الشرط
If لو / إذا	subject + past simple,	subject + would ('d) / wouldn't + inf.

ex. - If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.
- I would be excited if I passed my exam.

◀ لاحظ أن : إذا بدأنا بجملة جواب الشرط فإننا نحذف الفاصلة [,] السفلية.



Pop Quiz on Language

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If I .... a car, I would drive to work.
a. have b. has c. having d. had

2. If you studied harder, you ______ pass the exam.

a. will b. can c. would d. are

3. We ______ watch a movie tonight if we feel tired.

a. wouldn't b. won't c. had d. haven't

4. If she ______ taller, she would play basketball.

a. was b. had c. is d. have

5. I would visit my friend every day if she ______ in a hospital.

a. is b. was c. are d. aren't

6. If it ______, we would stay at home.

a. rain b. rains c. rained d. raining

7. If they ______ the truth, they would be angry.

a. know b. knows c. known d. knew

8. He would get high marks ______ he studied hard.

a. if b. while c. during d. before

9. If I were you, I ______ apologize to him.

a. will b. would c. have d. am

10. If I have money, I will ______ a car.

a. buy b. buys c. bought d. buying

11. If he ______ more time, he would read more books.

a. having b. has c. have d. had

12. If you ______ coffee at night, you won't sleep.

a. drink b. drank c. drinks d. drinking

13. If we lived in a warmer climate, we would ______ swimming more often.

a. go b. goes c. went d. going

14. If you had time, you ______ visit us.

a. will b. would c. won't d. are

15. I'd miss my friends if my family ______ to a new city.

a. moving b. move c. moved d. moves

16. If he ______ rich, he would buy a yacht.

a. had b. is c. are d. was

17. If she spoke English, she ______ apply for the job.

a. would b. will c. won't d. is

18. If my homework is difficult, my mom ______ help me.

a. would b. will c. is d. has

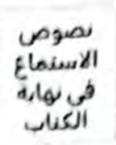
19. If I met a famous actor, I would ______ happy.

a. be b. been c. to be d. being

20. We would travel if we ______ rich.

a. are b. were c. was d. be

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Ahmed and I are going into the mountains with ....
   a. aunt b. cousin c. dad d. mom
2. There were .... bones in the mountains.
   a. dinosaur b. goat c. gazelle d. crocodile
3. My friend Ahmed was digging a .... there.
   a. ground b. home c. rest d. hole
4. We'll see really big dinosaur ....
   a. skeletons b. ribs c. mouths d. eyes

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who did the children talk to ?

....

2. What did the children imagine ?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

dinosaur – bone – shovel – life – photos

Nadia : Hello, Ahlam. What's this ?
Ahlam : It's a (1) .... Let's start digging.
Nadia : Look! I've found a (2) ....
Ahlam : Is it a (3) .... bone ?
Nadia : I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones.
Ahlam : You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real (4) ....
Nadia : They're just animal bones, maybe a goat or a gazelle.
Ahlam : I don't think so.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. If Omar .... to class, he would learn more.
   a. go b. goes c. has gone d. went
2. He .... go to university if he passes his exam.
   a. would b. would have c. will d. is

3. I won't go outside if it .... rainy.

a. had b. is c. were d. was

4. You wouldn't have so many accidents if you .... more carefully.

a. 'd drive b. drives c. drive d. drove

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The internet is a useful tool, but it can also be dangerous. Here are some tips on how to stay safe online. Don't share your personal information, such as your name, address, phone number, or passwords, with anyone you don't know or trust. Don't open emails from strangers. They might contain viruses or scams that can harm your computer or steal your money. Don't post anything online that you wouldn't want everyone to see. Be respectful and kind to others online. Don't bully, or insult anyone. If someone is bothering you, block them or report them. If you have any problems about online safety, talk to a parent, teacher, or friend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun **"They"** refers to ....

a. computers b. emails c. friends d. parents

2. You should be .... and kind to others online.

a. sad b. ugly c. enemy d. respectful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

....

4. What is the best thing to do if you have a problem online ?

....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – interested – He – in – very – dinosaurs.

....

2. were – There – bones – the mountains - dinosaur - in.

....



Lesson 3

▶ Resources in Ancient Egypt



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

economy	اقتصاد	fertile	خصبة
flax	نبات الكتان	linen	خيوط الكتان
copper	معدن النحاس	limestone	حجر الجير
papyrus	نبات البردى	agriculture	الزراعة

• Extra vocabulary

rope	حبل	clay	صلصال/ طين
mud	طين	medicine	دواء
Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية	jewelry	مجوهرات
hives	خلايا نحل	hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
sandals	صندل [حذاء مفتوح]	bricks	طوب
cooking pots	أوانى الطهى	reeds	قصب

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
flood	يفيض	flooded	build	يبنى	built
discover	يكتشف	discovered	bend	ينحنى / يثنى	bent
die	يموت	died	sell	يبيع	sold

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

transport ... across	ينقل .... عبر	make out of	يصنع من
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	How long ago ... ?	منذ متى ... ؟
in the shape of	فى شكل	at first	فى البداية

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Resources in ancient Egypt	flax	Flax is a tall plant.
	flower	It has a blue flower.
	yellow	The plant turns yellow after the flowers die.
	linen	People use flax to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong ropes.
	salt	Salt was a very important resource in ancient Egypt.
	fresh	People used salt to keep food fresh.
	medicine	Salt was also useful in medicine and agriculture.
	discovered	We think that the ancient Egyptians discovered gold about 5,000 years ago.
	rivers - mines	Ancient Egyptians made mines to get more gold out of the ground.
	archaeologists	Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.
	metal	Copper was very important metal.
	bend	Copper was easy to bend.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. People used .... to make linen for clothes.
   a. flax   b. salt   c. honey   d. axe
2. She is wearing nice .... around her neck.
   a. book   b. jewelry   c. brick   d. rope
3. .... was very useful planet in ancient Egypt.
   a. Gold   b. Papyrus   c. Salt   d. Mud
4. People in Ancient Egypt used .... to build houses.
   a. flax   b. honey   c. mud   d. cotton
5. The Nile used to .... and made the soil fertile.
   a. flood   b. stop   c. fly   d. break

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

II Listening and Reading

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz



Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt!



Mr Taha

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.



Do any of you know what flax is? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.



Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or **sell**.



Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects made from gold! We think they **discovered** gold about 5,000 years ago. At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.



Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص

Finally, stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt, too. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.



Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معاني الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**sell**" is the opposite of........................ .
a. make b. buy c. use d. see

Practice 2. The underlined word "**discovered**" means........................ .
a. ran out b. found out c. dug d. built

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
• ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
• تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

People kept bees[1] to make honey[2] in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive[3] but important natural resource.[4] Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine[5], too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.



People made long, round houses out of clay[6] for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape[7] of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats[8] so that the bees could find new flowers.

[1] نحل
[2] عسل
[3] غالٍ
[4] مصدر طبيعي
[5] دواء
[6] طين / صلصال
[7] شكل
[8] قوارب

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة في النص.

Learn 1. How long ago did people keep bees in ancient Egypt ?
– 4,500 years ago.

Practice 2. Why was honey important in ancient Egypt ?
....



Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

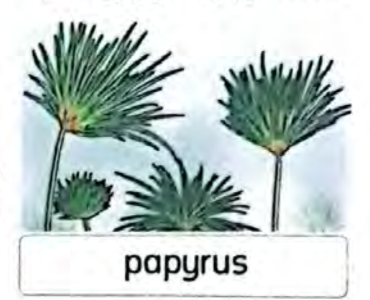
1. Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.



honey

استخدم المصريون العسل لصنع الدواء. كان مهمًا جدًا للمساعدة في مشاكل الجلد أو العينين. توجد كتابات هيروغليفية في المعابد القديمة تُظهر أن الناس يربون النحل.

2. People used this strong plant, papyrus, to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using papyrus.



papyrus

استخدم الناس هذا النبات القوى ، نبات البردى في صنع أشياء مثل السلال والصنادل، لكن أهم شيء صنعوه منه كان الورق. قام قدماء المصريين بصنع أول الكتب في العالم باستخدام نبات البردى.

3. Wood wasn't easy to find in ancient Egypt because there weren't many forests. People could get it from other countries.



wood

لم يكن من السهل العثور على الخشب في مصر القديمة لأنه لم يكن هناك الكثير من الغابات. تمكن الناس من الحصول عليه من دول أخرى.

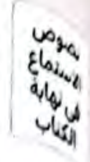
4. People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.



mud

استخدم الناس في مصر القديمة الطين لبناء المنازل والمباني الأخرى. استخرجوها من النيل عندما كانت طرية ثم جعلوها قوالب طوب مربعة، والتي كانت صلبة وقوية عندما جفت.

General Exercises on Lesson 3



- **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. What is the flax? - It is a ....

   a. gas b. liquid c. solid d. plant

2. What does the flax have? - It has .... flowers.

   a. red b. green c. blue d. black

3. The plant turns yellow after the flowers ....

   a. face b. die c. make d. sell

4. People used flax to make .... for clothes.

   a. linen b. wool c. silk d. cotton

- **2 Listen and answer the questions.**

1. What could the ancient Egyptians build?

   ....

2. What did ancient Egyptians use to transport stones?

   ....

- **3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

medicine – skin – gold – Nile – bricks

People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the (1) .... when it was soft. They made it into square (2) .... These were hard and strong when they dried. People also used honey to make (3) .... It was very important for helping with problems with the (4) .... or eyes.

- **4 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Ancient Egypt was very **<u>successful</u>** because it had good natural resources. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.



A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**<u>successful</u>**" is ....

   a. strong b. unsuccessful c. hot d. happy

2. The flood made the soil ....

   a. fertile b. dry c. weak d. hot

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Give a suitable title for the first paragraph.

....

4. What is the importance of salt? Mention two.

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. people – salt – Where – find – did ?

....

2. was – important – Why – copper ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Gold in ancient Egypt"

Guiding elements :

• jewelry • discover • natural resources • mine

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 4 ▶ Mona's amazing cousin



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

texture	ملمس	rough	فاس / خشن
comfortable	مريح	odor	رائحة / عطر
sticky	لزج	mass	كتلة
blind	كفيف / فاقد البصر		

• Extra vocabulary

physical	فيزيائي / مادى	wooden	خشبي
light	خفيف	smooth	ناعم / أملس
couch	اريكة	property	خاصية / صفة مميزة

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
pick	يلتقط	picked	mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
ask	يسأل	asked	know	يعرف	knew
sound	يبدو	sounded	bend	يثني	bent
guess	يخمن	guessed			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Come in !	ادخل !	put ... down	يضع ... في الأسفل
walk around	يتجول	sit on	يجلس على
pick up	يلتقط	get warm	يُسخّن
good at	جيد في	That sounds fun !	يبدو هذا ممتعًا!

Physical properties & adjectives

Physical properties	mass	odor	solid	liquid	
Adjective to describe texture	sticky	hard	soft	comfortable	rough

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word	Definition	
texture	is the feel of something	- الملمس هو ما تشعر به
odor	is the smell of something	- الرائحة هي ما تشمه
mass	is how heavy something is	- الكتلة هي وزن شيء ما
honey	is sticky, soft and smooth	- العسل يكون لزج وناعم وأملس

II Listening and Reading

 **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind, which means she cannot see.

"Hello, Heba. Come in!" says Mona.

"Welcome to my house. This is the living room."

Heba walks around the room and feels some of the things.



"It's a lovely room," she says.

"How do you know?" asks Mona.

"Well, when you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its texture. So, I know that you have soft, comfortable chairs. And I like your old wooden table."

"How do you know it's old and wooden?"

"The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. That means I can smell the wood."

Heba picks up a ping pong ball. "And I know this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy."

"You're amazing, Heba!" says Mona. "I'd love to learn more."

• Help your child read and learn. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم



"We can play a game. First, I'll ask Aunt Leila to get me some things from the kitchen. You mustn't look! Then, close your eyes. Can you tell me what the things are?"
"That sounds fun!" says Mona's mother. She puts some things down on the table. Mona closes her eyes. First, she picks up a soft banana.
"It's not hard," says Mona. "I can bend it, and it has an odor. Is it a banana?"
"Yes!" says Heba. "Now touch this carefully."
"Oh, it's soft and smooth, and it's sticky. Is it honey?" asks Mona.
"That's right! You're good at this game, Mona!" "Thanks, Heba. I know that I'll learn a lot from you while you're here!"
"I'm sure I'll learn a lot from you, too!" says Heba.

Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ واكمل.



1. It's a solid. It's hard. It's made of wood. You can't bend it. You can sit on it. (....................).

2. It's a gas. It's in the air. It doesn't have a color. People need this. (....................).





3. It's a solid. It's soft. You eat it. It's very cold. If it gets warm, it melts. (....................).

4. It's a liquid. It's yellow. You can pour it onto food or you can cook with it. (....................).





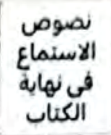
5. It's a gas. It has no color, and it's hot. You see it when you boil water. (....................).

6. It's a liquid. It's white. You drink it or cook with it. You can add it to coffee. (....................).





General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Texture is the .... of something.
   a. see b. smell c. feel d. touch
2. .... is the smell of something.
   a. Texture b. Odor c. Mass d. Sticky
3. Mass is how .... something is.
   a. soft b. long c. tall d. heavy
4. Honey is ...., soft and smooth.
   a. sticky b. heavy c. rough d. hard

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why is Fatma excited ?
   ....
2. What does "blind" mean ?
   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

feels – blind – rough – smell – mass

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is (1)................. which means that she can't see. Heba walks around and (2)................. some of the things. The old wood is rough and it has an odor so she can (3)................. it. Heba picks up a ping pong ball. She knows that it's a ball not a stone because of its (4)................. .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Once, there was a wise old man who lived in a small village. He was very respected and loved by everyone. He always had good advice and solutions for any problem.

One day, a young man came to <u>him</u> and said, "I want to be as wise as you. How can I achieve that ?" The old man smiled and said, "There is no easy way to become wise. You have to learn from your own experiences and mistakes. But I can give you a tip: always ask questions and listen to the answers."

The young man thanked him and left. He followed his advice and soon became a wise man himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to the ....

a. wise man   b. young man   c. dead man   d. lazy man

2. The young man wanted to be ....

a. lazy   b. old   c. wise   d. greedy

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

....

4. Where did the old man live ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. color – it – What – is ?

....

2. texture – What – of – have – kind – does – honey ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Honey"

Guiding elements :

- Is it a liquid or a gas ?
- Is it hard or soft ?
- What kind of texture does it have ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 5

▶ A science experiment



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

science experiment	تجربة علمية	glass jar	برطمان / وعاء زجاجي
syringe	حُقنة	maple syrup	شراب القيقب
dish detergent	منظف أطباق	vegetable oil	زيت نباتي

• Extra vocabulary

layer	طبقة	thick	سميك - كثيف
group	مجموعة	amounts	كميات
separate	منفصل	coin	عملة معدنية

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
mix with	يختلط بـ	mixed with	let	يترك	let
pour	يصب	poured	put	يضع	put
float	يطفو	floated	sink	يغرق - يغوص	sank
wonder	يتساءل - يتعجب	wondered			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

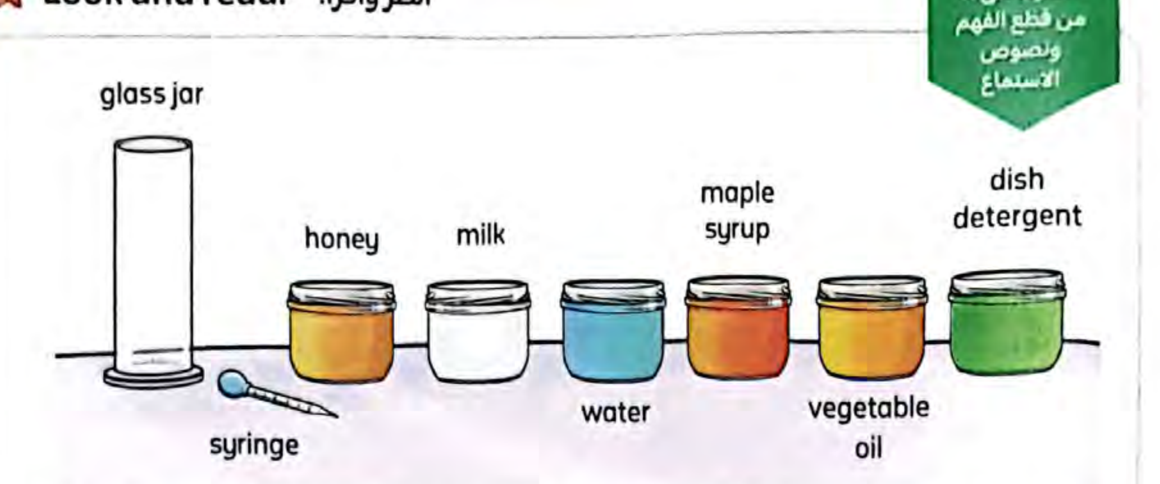
do a science experiment	يقوم بتجربة علمية	find out	يكتشف
		on top of	أعلى / في قمة
the side of	جانب	give out	يوزع
carry on	يستمر	to the bottom	إلى الأسفل
at the end	في النهاية	go down to	ينزل إلى
in the center	في المنتصف	go through	يذهب عبر



Pop Quiz

• ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
• تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



"Today we're going to do a science experiment[1]!" said Mrs Hend. "What happens when we pour different liquids into one container?"
"I think they mix[2] together," said Amir.
"Let's find out!" said Mrs Hend.

[1] تجربة علمية
[2] يختلط
[3] منظف أطباق
[4] حقنة
[5] طبقة

Mrs Hend had some small jars with these liquids: honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent[3]. She also had some tall glass jars and a plastic syringe[4]. She gave these out to groups of children. Then she showed them what to do.
"First, slowly pour in the honey. Don't let it touch the side of the jar."

Amir and Tarek poured the honey in. It was sticky and thick.
"Next, slowly pour in the maple syrup."



Amir and Tarek noticed that the maple syrup wasn't as thick as the honey. When they poured it, the syrup made a layer[5] on top of the honey.

"Look!" said Tarek. "It didn't mix with the honey. It's on top."
"Use the syringe to put your milk slowly on top of the syrup, in the center. Then do the same with the dish detergent," said Mrs Hend.



Amir and Tarek added the milk. It made a white layer on top of the syrup.

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

They then added the dish detergent. Then they used the syringe to make the water and vegetable oil pour down the side of the jar. Amir and Tarek **carried on** adding liquids in very slowly. **At the end**, their jar had six separate layers in.



"Well done!" said Mrs Hend. "Why do you think that happened?"
"Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?" asked Amir.

"No, Amir. We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!"

"We can put the solid objects into the liquids. I **wonder** what will happen." Amir said.

"We can put the coin in first." Tarek said. "Look! The coin sinks to the bottom. It goes through all the liquids." Amir said.

"This is a ping pong ball. This is very light." Tarek said.
"It doesn't go down to the honey. It floats on top of the water!" Amir said.

Determine the meaning of words and phrases.

حدد معانى الكلمات والعبارات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**wonder**" means ....

a. ask b. answer c. add d. pour

Practice 2. The underlined phrase "**carried on**" means ....

a. floated b. thanked c. continued d. mixed

3. The phrase "**At the end**" is the same meaning as "......................".

a. In first b. Finally c. Secondly d. Thirdly

General Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

coin – heavy – light – sinks – wonder

Mohamed : Hello, Tarek.
Tarek : Hi, Mohamed. Let's do a science experiment.
Mohamed : OK. We can put the solid objects into the liquids. I (1) .... what will happen.
Tarek : We can put the (2) .... first.
Mohamed : Look! The coin (3) .... to the bottom. It goes through all the liquids.
Tarek : This is a ping pong ball. This is very (4) ....
Mohamed : It doesn't go down to the honey. It floats on top of the water.
Tarek : You're right.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. different – did – use – the class – liquids – How many ?

....

2. is – and – Honey – sweet – sticky.

....

3 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Youssif to tell him about a science experiment. Your name is Tarek. Your email address is tarek@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is youssif@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• glass jar • honey • maple syrup • layer • liquid

From	
To	
Subject	

....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 6

▸ Writing a report



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

tunnel	نفق	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو (طائر مائي)
waterfalls	شلالات مياه	orchard	بستان (فاكهة)
oasis	واحة	coastline	الخط الساحلي

• Extra vocabulary

sound	صوت	research	بحث
lake	بحيرة	report	تقرير
the Mediterranean	البحر الأبيض المتوسط	facts	حقائق
practice	ممارسة	landmarks	المعالم الرئيسية
fishing center	مركز للصيد	farming	الزراعة
port	ميناء	crops	محاصيل

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go on a trip to	يذهب في رحلة قصيرة إلى	through a tunnel	عبر نفق
travel from .. to	ينتقل من .. إلى	safe to	آمن لـ
cool down	يهدأ - يبرد	at the bottom	في الأسفل
come from	يأتي من	famous for	مشهور بـ

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls	sound-loud	The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud.
	oasis-desert	The water comes from an oasis in the desert.
	lake - tunnel	The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.
	birds	There are a lot of different birds living at Wadi El Rayan.
	lakes	There are two lakes at Wadi El Rayan.

II Listening and Reading

⭐ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Pop Quiz

- ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على ٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

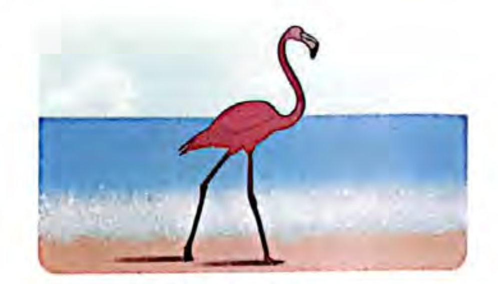
Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

A report by Wael Mahdi

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls[1] at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes[2] there: one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound[3] of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well!



We learned that the water comes from an oasis[4] in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert[5] with water. The water travels[6] eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel[7].



A flamingo

Our teacher also told us that there are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo[8].

Then it was time to have some fun! We jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after a long day.

[1] شلالات المياه
[2] بحيرات
[3] صوت
[4] واحة
[5] صحراء
[6] ينتقل
[7] نفق
[8] طائر الفلامنجو

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. Why can't Wael's class hear their teacher well?
- Because the sound of water falling is very loud.

Practice 2. What birds did Wael see there?
....

UNIT 3

 Read, learn and identify.

Damietta

A report by Gameela Hassan



Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation. Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center. It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries. Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful, modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.



How to write a report كيفية كتابة تقرير

▸ **When your are going to write a report about a place you have visited:**

1. Think about how you can answer these questions to include facts, details, and definitions in your report.

   - فكر في كيفية الإجابة على هذه الأسئلة لتضمين الحقائق والتفاصيل والتعريفات في تقريرك.

2. This makes your report more interesting and helps the reader learn more about the place.

   - هذا يجعل التقرير الخاص بك أكثر إثارة للاهتمام ويساعد القارئ على معرفة المزيد عن المكان.

3. Your research will give you facts to include in your report.

   - سيعطيك بحثك حقائق لتضمينها في تقريرك.

4. You can write definitions of things to help readers understand.

   - يمكنك كتابة تعريفات للأشياء لمساعدة القراء على الفهم.

General Exercises on Lesson 6



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I will go on a trip to ....
   a. Aswan b. Luxor c. Alexandria d. Port Said
2. We are planning a .... - day trip.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
3. We will visit .... on the second day.
   a. High Dam b. waterfalls
   c. the Valley of the Kings d. Karnak Temple
4. We will come back by ....
   a. bus b. train c. car d. plane

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Zein and Omar learn ?

   ....

2. Which bird is Zein and Omar's favorite ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

history - trees - orchards - Island - coastline

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful (1) .... and many people like to go there on vacation. Ras El-Bar (2) .... is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and (3) .... to see. Orchards are places where fruit (4) .... are grown.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last month, My family went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. **It** was very beautiful. There are two lakes there: one at the top of the waterfall and one at the **bottom**. There are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds. My favorite was the flamingo. It was time to have some fun. We jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after a long day.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :**

1. The word **bottom** is the opposite of the word "........................".

a. hard   b. low   c. top   d. soft

2. There are two........................at Wadi El Rayan.

a. beaches   b. oases   c. valleys   d. lakes

B. **Answer the following questions :**

3. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to ?

....

4. Is it safe to swim in the lake ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. high – the – How – are – waterfalls ?

....

2. an – What – oasis – is ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls"

Guiding elements :

- trip
- water
- lake
- oasis
- loud

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 7 ▸ Language



I Vocabulary

comics	مجلات فكاهية	turn around	يلتف حول
calculator	آلة حاسبة	practice	تدريب - تمرين
jug	إبريق	on her own	بمفردها
notes	ملاحظات	borrow	يستعير

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

"OK, students", said Mrs Hend. "Today we're going to do a science experiment[1]. You can work in groups[2] of three. There is a solid object in one box[3], and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions."

[1] تجربة
[2] مجموعات
[3] صندوق
[4] بسعادة

Lara was sitting on her own, but Reem and Dina were sitting in front of her. Reem turned around and spoke to Lara.

"Lara, Mrs Hend said we could work in groups of three. Would you like to work with us?"

"Oh, yes please." said Lara, happily[4].

The girls sat together, and they took out their pens and notebooks.

"OK," said Dina, "What do we need to do?"

Lara looked at her notes. "Mrs Hend said there was a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box."

"That's right," said Reem. "She said we had to study them and answer some questions." "Great, let's get started!" said Dina.

• Help your child listen and read the text. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.



III Language

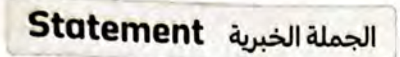
Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

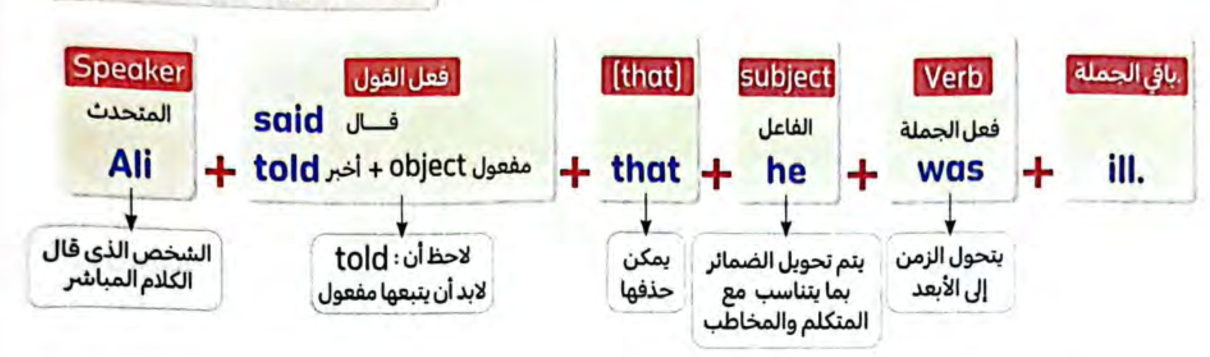
◄ الكلام المباشر "Direct speech" هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان شخص ما مباشرة أو نصًا ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتى تنصيص "....." :

- "I am ill," said Ali.

◄ الكلام غير المباشر "Reported speech" هو الكلام الذى ينقله شخص ما عن شخص آخر، ولا يوضع الكلام غير المباشر بين علامتى تنصيص :

- Ali said (that) he was ill.





◄ خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى غير المباشر:

① تحويل فعل القول كالتالى :

said —تبقى كما هى→ said	said to —تحول إلى→ told
say / says —تبقى كما هى→ say / says	say to / says to —تحول إلى→ tell / tells

◄ لاحظ الفرق بين told / said

said لا يأتى بعدها مفعول

ex. Omar said, "I like chicken." → Omar said that he liked chicken.

told لابد أن يأتى بعدها مفعول

ex. "I like chicken," Omar said to me. → Omar told me that he liked chicken.

• Help your child learn how to use reported speech. - ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم الكلام غير المباشر.

٢ تحذف الأقواس ونربط بكلمة that ويمكن حذفها.

٣ يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتوافق مع المتكلم والمخاطب :

ضمائر الفاعل	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he / she
you	I / we
we	they

ضمائر المفعول	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech
me	him / her
you	me / us
us	them

صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech
my	his / her
your	my / our
our	their

ex. "I am going to do my homework," said Lara.
Lara said she was going to do her homework.

لاحظ تحول (I) إلى (she) وتحول (my) إلى (her) لأن الضمائر تعود على (مؤنث) وهي (Lara) .

٤ يتم تحويل زمن الفعل كالتالي عند التحويل إلى صيغة الكلام غير المباشر :

Present Simple ⟶ Past Simple	
"I like reading," said Fares.	- Fares said he liked reading. تحول الفعل (like) إلى (liked).
"My dad works in Cairo," said Dalia.	- Dalia said her dad worked in Cairo. تحول الفعل (works) إلى (worked).

Verb to be	
Present (am - is - are)	Past (was - were)
"The train is fast," said Mona.	- Mona said the train was fast. تحول الفعل (is) إلى (was).
"The cakes are delicious," said Ali.	- Ali said the cakes were delicious. تحول الفعل (are) إلى (were).

Modal verbs	
can + inf.	could + inf.
"Salma can play the piano," said Amira.	- Amira said Salma could play the piano. تحول الفعل (can) إلى (could).
will + inf.	would + inf.
"I will travel to Alexandria", said Amany.	- Amany said she would travel to Alexandria. تحول الفعل (will) إلى (would).

٥ يتم تحويل الظروف الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالتالي إذا كان فعل القول ماضيا (said) وتبقى كما هي إذا كان فعل القول مضارعا (say / says) :

أسماء الإشارة	
Direct Speech	**Reported Speech**
this	that
these	those
ظروف المكان	
here	there

التعبيرات الزمنية			
Direct Speech	**Reported Speech**	**Direct Speech**	**Reported Speech**
today	that day	tonight	that night
tomorrow	the following day	now	then
yesterday	the day before	ago	before
last week	the week before		



Pop Quiz on Language

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Dalia said it .... cold and rainy.
   a. is b. was c. has d. having
2. Amira said she .... to the library on Mondays.
   a. goes b. go c. went d. is going
3. Sam .... he could play the guitar.
   a. say b. told c. said d. saying
4. Omar said he .... reading comics.
   a. likes b. like c. liked d. don't like
5. She .... me that she was playing in the club.
   a. tell b. tells c. said d. told
6. She said that they .... Aswan.
   a. visit b. visiting c. visits d. visited
7. He .... that he was watching TV.
   a. said b. told c. says d. tells
8. She said that she .... at home.
   a. is b. has c. have d. was
9. Omar .... me that he had a car.
   a. says b. said c. tells d. told
10. Hend said she .... meet her friends.
    a. will b. would c. can d. has
11. He told me the baby .... asleep.
    a. is b. has c. was d. does
12. He .... that he forgot his books.
    a. said b. says c. tells d. told
13. They .... him that he had to study hard.
    a. said b. says c. tells d. told
14. Salma said she .... in a bank.
    a. works b. will work c. has worked d. worked
15. Nancy said she .... going to the market.
    a. is b. are c. was d. were

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Make logical inferences from the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استنتاج بعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل غير مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيداً لأن الإجابة قد تكون موجودة بشكل غير مباشر فى النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The sound of water falling is very loud. I saw the flamingo. It's my favorite.


شرح الحل
تفهم المعلومة الواردة جيدًا لكى تتمكن من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلاً:
• صوت الماء المتساقط عالى جدًا مما يدل على أن الشلالات مرتفعة.
• يقول كاتب النص أنه رأى طائر الفلامنجو مما يدل على وجود أنواع من الطيور.

1. Do you think the waterfalls are high? Why?
   - Yes, because the sound of the falling water is very loud.
2. Are there any birds at Wadi El Rayan?
   - Yes, such as the flamingo.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Ancient Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping people with problems with the skin or eyes. They also used papyrus to make baskets, sandals and paper. They made some of the first books in the world. They used mud to build houses and other buildings.

1. Could the ancient Egyptians write?

   ....

2. Honey was very useful for the ancient Egyptians. Explain.

   ....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [رحلة إلى دمياط] و [مصر القديمة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
A trip to Damietta	Write the meaning : محبوب / مشهور .... إجازات .... ساحل .... ميناء .... صيد .... تاريخ	Complete the sentences : 1. Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean .... of Egypt. 2. Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most .... places in Damietta. 3. Many people like to visit Damietta on.......... . 4. Damietta has the largest number of .... boats in Egypt.	Write a paragraph using the sentences : "A trip to Damietta" ....
Ancient Egypt	اقتصاد .... خصب .... محاصيل .... ناجح .... نبات الكتان .... الزراعة	1. Ancient Egypt was very .... 2. Agriculture was a very important part of the .... of ancient Egypt. 3. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil .... 4. Farmers grow lots of different	Write an email using the sentences : "Ancient Egypt" ....



Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Papyrus	make - paper	Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper and sandals.
	books	They made some of the first books in the world with papyrus.
Stones and rocks	natural resources	Stones and rocks were useful natural resource in ancient Egypt.
	build - pyramids	There were lots of rocks such as limestone, so the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids.
	boats - transported	Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.
Solid objects	fixed shape	Solid objects have a fixed shape.
	pick up	We can pick up a solid object.
	coal	Coal and wood are solid objects.
Liquid objects	fixed shape	Liquids don't have a fixed shape.
	liquid	We can't pick up a liquid.
	flow	A liquid can flow.
Natural resources	nature	We get natural resources from nature.
	include - wood	Natural resources include soil and wood.
	non-renewable	Some natural resources are non-renewable.
States of water	water - liquid	Water is a liquid.
	freeze - turn	If we freeze liquid water, it turns to ice.
	ice - solid	Ice is a solid.
	melts - becomes	When ice melts, it becomes a liquid.



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٠ جملة).

1 Natural resources

We use natural resources to make the things we need[1]. For example, we use wood to make tables[2]. We use natural resources to build houses, and plants for food[3]. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity[4]. Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable[5].

2 A trip to Wadi El Rayan

We went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan[6]. It was beautiful[7]. We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert[8]. Our teacher told us that there are a lot of different birds living there[9]. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo[10].

3 Salt

Salt is a natural resource[11]. Salt was a very important resource in ancient Egypt[12]. Ancient Egyptians sold it to other countries[13]. People used salt to keep food fresh[14]. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture[15].

4 Agriculture in ancient Egypt

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources[16]. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt[17]. The Nile flooded every year[18]. The soil is very fertile[19]. Farmers grew lots of different crops such as cotton and rice[20].

Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

stone	حجر	copper	نحاس
gold	ذهب	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
steam	بخار	mud	طين
dig	يحفر	archaeologist	عالم آثار
bones	عظام	mountain	جبل
hole	حفرة	economy	اقتصاد
shovel	مجرفة	fertile	خصب
papyrus	ورق البردى	linen	خيوط الكتان
honey	عسل	jewelry	مجوهرات
flax	نبات الكتان	raw materials	مواد خام
texture	ملمس		

Language

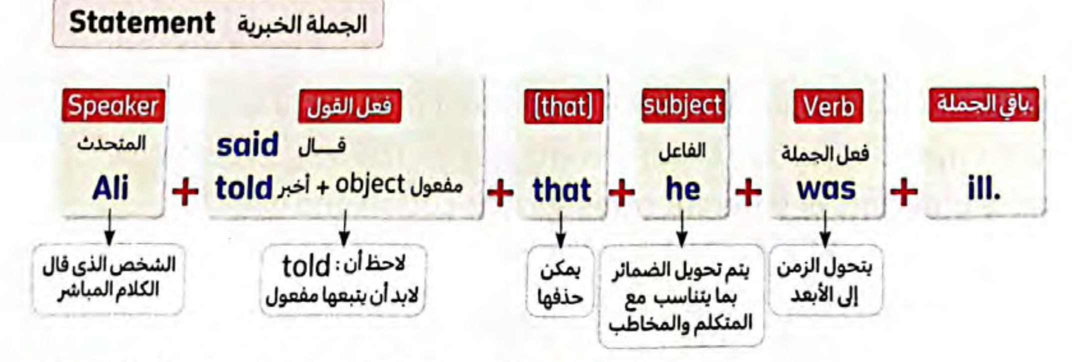
A. First and second conditional (If):

	أداة الشرط	جملة الشرط	جملة جواب الشرط
First conditional	If إذا / لو	subject + present simple,	subject + will / won't + inf. المصدر ...
Second conditional	If إذا / لو	subject + past simple,	subject + would / wouldn't + inf. المصدر ...

- If we go to the museum, we'll see a big dinosaur skeleton.
- If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

B. Reported speech

Statement الجملة الخبرية



- "I go to the library on Mondays," said Amira.

  Amira said she went to the library on Mondays.

Test 5 on Unit 3

- نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
- التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Water is a ....

   a. liquid b. solid c. gas d. soft

2. If we freeze water, it turns into ....

   a. oil b. ice c. gas d. sand

3. Ice is a ....

   a. light b. subject c. solid d. liquid

4. When ice ...., it becomes a liquid.

   a. melts b. dies c. runs d. sleeps

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did the ancient Egyptians use honey for ? ....
2. What did they use to make paper ? ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

What - liquid - fun - eat - drink

Mona : Let's play a game about guessing names of objects.
Noha : OK, Mona. I have to ask questions to guess what it is.
Mona : That sounds (1) .... Let's start.
Is it a (2) .... or a gas ?
Noha : It's a liquid.
Mona : (3) .... color is it ?
Noha : It's white and we can (4) .... it.
Mona : I know ! It's milk.
Noha : That's right!



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There were many natural resources in Egypt. Flax is a tall plant with blue flowers. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope. The ancient Egyptians took salt from some of the lakes in the Nile Delta. They sold this resource to other countries. They used gold to make jewelry and beautiful objects. People used stones and rocks to make buildings including temples and the pyramids. They discovered copper which was a <u>**soft**</u> metal and it was easy to bend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Flax is a ....

   a. plant b. gas c. liquid d. solid

2. The underlined word "<u>soft</u>" is the opposite of ....

a. easy   b. hard   c. difficult   d. cheap

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the ancient Egyptians use stones and rocks for ?

....

4. What did the ancient Egyptians make out of flax ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari climbed the tallest mountain.		
2. Ras Hankorab beach isn't a good place for gazelles.		
3. Ras Hankorab beach is the home of Nubian ibex.		
4. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Gebel Elba is too .... for Jubari.
2. Jubari's mother advised him not to .... near animals with sharp teeth.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If I .... in a hot air balloon, I wouldn't be frightened.

a. flew   b. fly   c. flying   d. flies

2. "Let's go to the mall." .... Rania.

a. said   b. told   c. asked   d. wanted

3. If my grandpa .... younger, he would play tennis with me.

a. is   b. was   c. be   d. has been

4. He .... me that he was ill.

a. says   b. tells   c. told   d. said

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. water - <u>An oasis</u> -with - a place - the desert - is - in.

....

2. something - of - smell - the - <u>Odor</u> - is.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Resources in ancient Egypt"

Guiding elements :

• copper   • medicine   • flax   • cooking pots

....

....

....

Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Nada is a .... girl. *(Sharkia - Hosseinia 2023)*
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. clever d. bad
2. She plays ....
   a. basketball b. tennis c. swimming d. volleyball
3. Nada eats healthy food like fruit and ....
   a. candy b. vegetables c. ice cream d. rice
4. Nada has .... brother.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why does Ramy walk to his school ? *(Qalyubia - Benha 2023)*

   ....

2. What subjects does Ramy study at school ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

(Cairo - El-Sahel 2023)

freeze – gas – liquid – boil – solid

Solids, liquids and gases can change from one state to another. When you (1)........................ water, it turns to steam. Steam is a (2)........................ . Water is a liquid. If you (3)........................ water, it turns to ice. Ice is a (4)........................ . When ice gets warm, it melts and turns into liquids.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. *(Alexandria - Montazah 2023)*

Did you know that the ancient Egyptians were very successful because they had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of Egypt.

The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton, and rice. Do any of you know what flax is ? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flower die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is the ....
   a. museum b. agriculture c. monuments d. learning English
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a. soil b. flax c. cotton d. crop

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is flax?

....

4. Why were the ancient Egyptians successful? Mention one reason.

....

5 The Reader

(Sharkia 2023)

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. The first animal Jubari met was a dugong.		
2. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.		
3. Lake Nasser is an important resource of water.		
4. The desert is the perfect place for gazelles to run.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari didn't want to live in ....
2. .... trees need gazelles.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Samy said he .... play the guitar. *(Kafr El-Sheikh - El Hamoul 2023)*
   a. can b. is c. could d. has
2. If he ran quickly, he .... the race. *(Cairo - El-Tebeen 2023)*
   a. will win b. won c. would win d. has won
3. Omar said he .... reading comics. *(Qalyubia - Qanater 2023)*
   a. likes b. like c. liked d. liking
4. If I had money, I .... travel around the world. *(Beni Suef - Nasser 2023)*
   a. will b. would c. can d. won't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. use – a – medicine – People – as – honey. *(Cairo - Ein Shams 2023)*

....

2. A chair – of – made – is – wood. *(Beni Suef - Beni Suef 2023)*

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A trip to Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls"

Guiding elements:

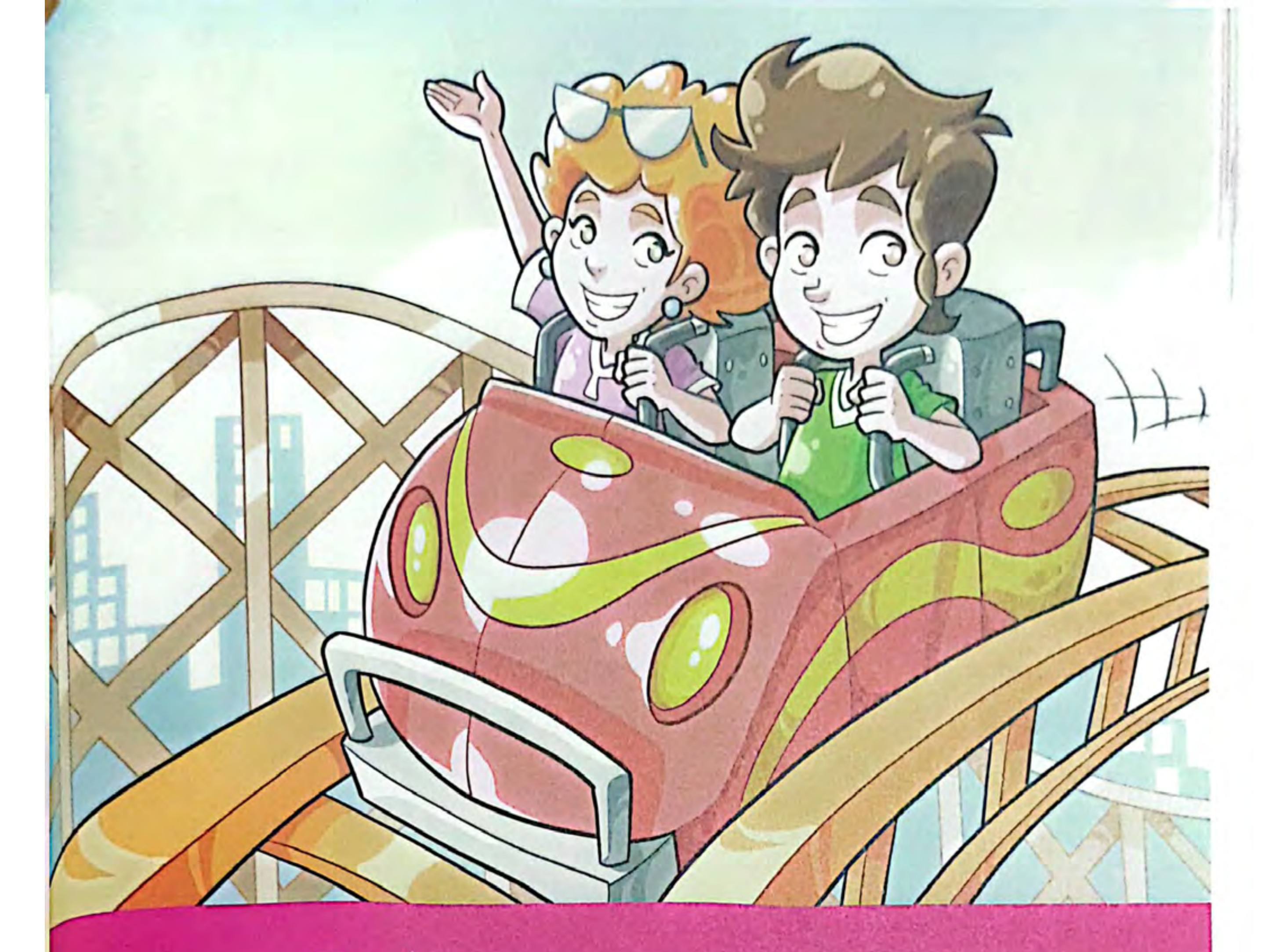
• last summer • friends • bus • waterfalls • photos • lunch • birds

....

....

....

(Kafr El Sheikh - Desouok 2023)



Unit 4

We're on the move

نحن فى حركة دائمة

Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- explore how bikes move.
  - أكتشف كيف تتحرك الدراجات.
- identify, understand, and use question tags.
  - أحدد وأفهم وأستخدم الاسئلة المزيلة.
- read and follow instruction for making two different paper airplanes.
  - أقرأ وأتبع التعليمات الخاصة بصنع طائرتين ورقيتين مختلفتين.
- read a science-fiction story about flying and gravity.
  - أفهم قصة خيال علمى عن الطيران والجاذبية.
- understand blogs about jobs in science.
  - أفهم مدونات عن الوظائف فى العلوم.
- write an email using sequencing words.
  - اكتب بريدًا إلكترونيا باستخدام تسلسل الكلمات.
- understand a story about the first man to fly.
  - افهم قصة عن أول رجل قام بالطيران.

Lesson 1

▶ My new bike



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

cycling	ركوب الدراجات	pedal	دواسة
force	قوة	brakes	مكابح - فرامل
wheel	عجلة	speed	سرعة
push force	قوة الدفع	pull force	قوة السحب

Extra vocabulary

roller coaster	قطار الملاهى السريع	transportation	وسائل النقل
second	ثانية (وحدة قياس الوقت)	cupboard	دولاب
careful	حذر - حريص	hill	تل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled
push	يدفع	pushed
increase	يزيد	increased
pull	يسحب	pulled
pass	يمر	passed

Irregular

Present		Past
teach	يعلم	taught
ride	يركب	rode
throw	يرمى	threw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Shall I .... ?	أيمكننى أن / أيجب على أن ... ؟	get into	يدخل
I see.	أنا أفهم ذلك.	kick a ball	يركل الكرة
go up	يصعد	take a long time to...	يأخذ وقت طويل لكى ...
fall over	يسقط	for the first time	لأول مرة
put on brakes	يضغط على الفرامل	go faster down	يسرع لأسفل
slow down	يبطئ - يخفف سرعة	Be careful !	كن حذرًا !
Here I go.	ها أنا ذا.	put on socks	يرتدى الجوارب
Are you OK ?	هل أنت على ما يرام ؟	get to	يصل إلى
up and down a hill	أعلى وأسفل التل		

Notes for parents

- **Did you know ?**
- The fastest roller coaster in the world is the Formula Rossa. It can move from 0 to 240 kilometers an hour in 4.9 seconds. You can ride it in Abu Dhabi.

هل تعلم؟

- أسرع قطار ملاهى فى العالم هو فورملا روسا. يمكن أن يتحرك من صفر إلى ٢٤٠ كيلو مترًا فى الساعة فى ٤,٩ ثوانى. يمكنك ركوبه فى أبو ظبى.

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Riding a bike	forces	Riding a bike is all about the forces.
	move - pedals	You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals.
	stop - brakes	You use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes.
	slow down	Using the brakes slows down or stops the wheel.
	increase - push	If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.
	hill - faster	When you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.
	cycle - slowly	When you cycle too slowly, the bike will fall over.

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Mazen : Nabil, have you seen my new bike ? I got it last week from my grandparents.

نبيل، هل رأيت دراجتى الجديدة ؟ حصلت عليها الأسبوع الماضى من أجدادى.

Nabil : It's great! Shall I get my bike and we can cycle together?

إنه شئ رائع! هل بإمكانى أن أحضر دراجتى ويمكننا أن نركب دراجاتنا معًا ؟

Mazen : Well, I haven't ridden a bike before. I don't know how. My parents want me to learn.

حسنًا، لم أركب دراجة من قبل. لا أعرف كيف. والداى يريدون أن أتعلم.

Nabil : I can teach you. It's easy. It's all about the forces which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

استطيع تعليمك. إنه سهل. الأمر كله يتعلق بالقوى التى تعلمنا عنها فى درس العلوم بالأمس.

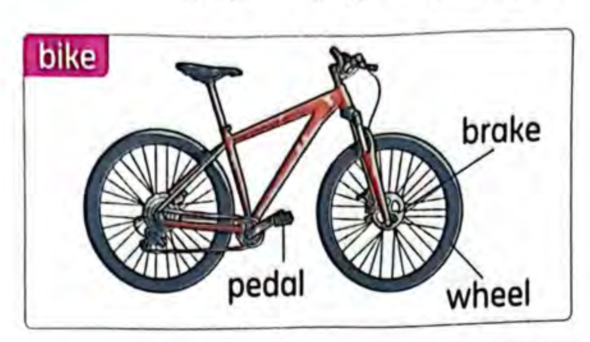
Mazen : What do you mean ? ماذا تقصد؟

Mazen

• Help your child listen and read. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Nabil : You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

أنت تستخدم القوة لتحريك الدراجة عن طريق دفع الدواسات. يمكنك أيضًا استخدام القوة لإيقاف الدراجة باستخدام الفرامل. هذا يبطئ أو يوقف العجلات. إذا كنت ترغب في زيادة سرعتك، أدفع الدواسات أكثر بسرعة.



Mazen : I see. I should be good at cycling then, as I'm top of the class in science! Here I go!

افهم ذلك. يجب أن أكون جيدًا في ركوب الدراجات بعد ذلك، حيث كوني من أوائل الفصل في مادة العلوم! ها أنا ذا أنطلق !

Nabil : Good. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill.

حسنًا. ستحتاج إلى ركوب الدراجة بقوة أكبر عندما تصعد هذا التل.

Mazen : Do you mean use more push force ?

هل تقصد أستخدم المزيد من قوة الدفع ؟

Nabil : Yes, but remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

نعم، لكن تذكر، عندما تنزل من التل، تكون الدراجة أكثر سرعة، لذلك ستحتاج إلى استخدام الفرامل.

Mazen : I did it! That was great! لقد فعلتها! هذا عظيم!

Nabil : Be careful! You're now cycling too slowly. You need to go faster or the bike will fall over... Oh, dear, are you OK?

كن حذرًا! أنت الآن تقود الدراجة ببطء شديد. أنت بحاجة للذهاب بسرعة أو الدراجة سوف تسقط ...أوه، عزيزي، هل أنت بخير ؟

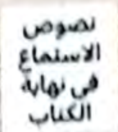
Mazen : I fell, but I'm fine. لقد سقطت، لكنني بخير.

Nabil : I'll help you stand up. سوف أساعدك على الوقوف.

Mazen : Thanks! That's an example of a pull force, isn't it ? I think I'm better at science than riding a bike!

شكرًا! هذا مثال على قوة السحب، أليس كذلك؟ أعتقد أنني أفضل في العلوم عن ركوب الدراجة!

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How do you stop the bike ?

....

2. What do you do to increase your speed ?

....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

bike – forces – ridden – week – brakes

Ali : Have you seen my new bike ?
Hamza : No, I haven't.
Ali : I got it last (1) .... from my grandparents.
Hamza : It's great ! Shall I get my (2) .... and we can cycle together ?
Ali : Well, I haven't (3) .... a bike before. I don't know how.
Hamza : I can teach you. It's easy.
Ali : How ?
Hamza : It's all about the (4) .... which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Riding a bike is all about the forces. You use force to get the bike to <u>move</u> by pushing the pedals. You use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly. You need to cycle harder when you go up that hill. That's push force. When you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes. When you cycle too slowly, the bike will fall over.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "......................".
   a. Healthy food b. Places c. Jobs d. Riding a bike

2. The opposite of the verb "<u>move</u>" is "......................".
   a. cycle b. stop c. want d. increase

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What happens when you go down the hill ?

....

4. How can we stop the bike ?

....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. up - you - I'll - stand - help.

....

2. mean - do - you - What ?

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Riding a bike"

Guiding elements :

- forces
- pedals
- brakes
- slow down
- wheel

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2 ▶ Language

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



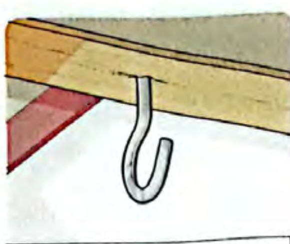
rope حبل



spring زنبرك



tires إطارات





hook خُطاف



path مسار / ممر

Extra vocabulary

gravity	جاذبية	falling	هبوط	air resistance	مقاومة الهواء
friction	احتكاك	flying	الطيران	normal size	الحجم الطبيعي
physics	مادة الفيزياء	tension	توتر / ضغط	solar system	النظام الشمسي
immediately	على الفور				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
create	يخلق / ينشئ	created
tie	يربط	tied
press	يضغط	pressed
type	يكتب على الكمبيوتر	typed
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed

Irregular

Present		Past
hang	يعلق	hung
forget	ينسى	forgot
fall	يسقط	fell
keep	يحفظ	kept

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
tension	is a pull force هى قوة سحب
gravity	is the pull force that brings a ball back to the ground when you throw it هى قوة السحب التى تعيد الكرة إلى الأرض عند رميها

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

- Tension is a pull force.
- There's a special force called air resistance.
- Air resistance is the force that works against the force of an object moving through the air.
- Air resistance makes an object move more slowly and not fall to the ground immediately.
- When we use a keyboard to type, we press down on the P key, for example, the spring gets smaller. But when you take your finger off the P key, the spring opens back up and returns to its normal size and shape. We call this spring force.
- Gravity is the pull force that brings objects towards the Earth.
- Gravity keeps people from flying up into space.

II Language

Question Tag السؤال المذيل

▸ Question tags have two parts. The first part is like a sentence and the second part is the question tag.

◂ يتكون السؤال المذيل من جزئين. الجزء الأول يكون جملة والجزء الثانى هو السؤال المذيل.

• **Usage :**

▸ We use question tags to check or confirm information.

◂ نستخدم الأسئلة المذيلة للتحقق أو التأكد من معلومات.

1. If the verb in the sentence is positive, the question tag is negative.
2. If the verb in the sentence is negative, the question tag is positive.

Notes for parents

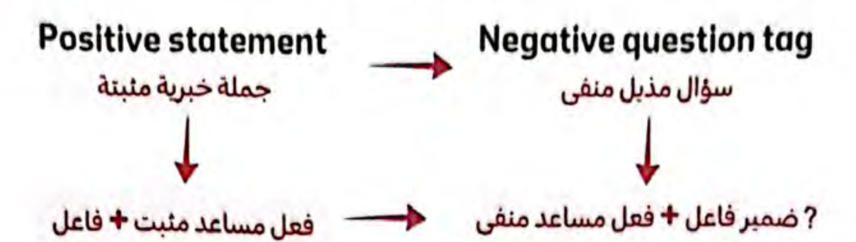
• Help your child read and identify some definitions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على بعض التعريفات.

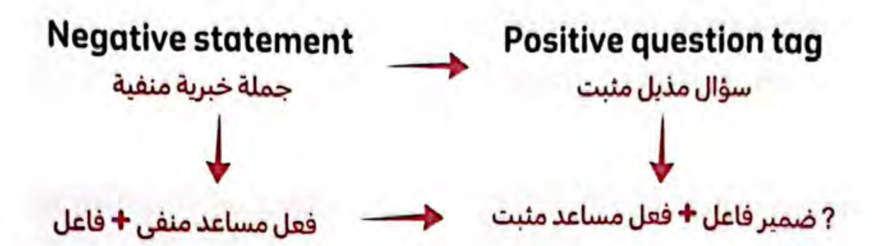


• Formation :

① عند وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :

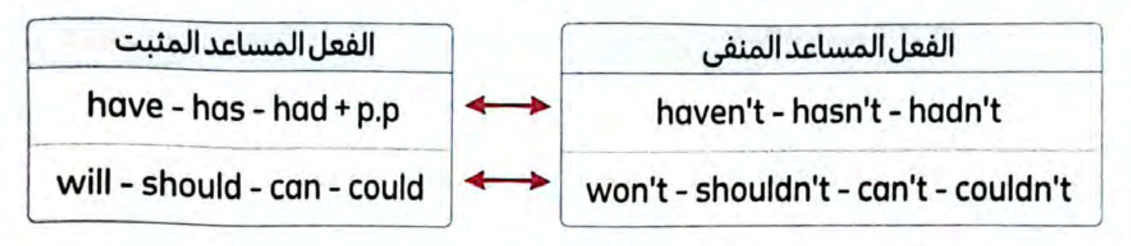


▶ Hana is playing tennis, isn't she ? (present)



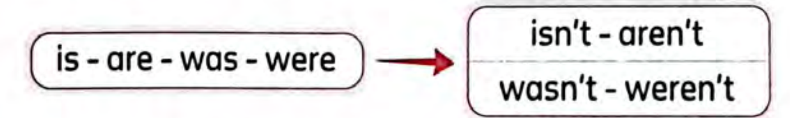
▶ - Your brother can't play the guitar, can he ?
- It won't (will not) be hot tomorrow, will it ? (Modal verbs)

◀ أى أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفى أو من النفى إلى الإثبات كالآتى :



الفعل المساعد المثبت		الفعل المساعد المنفى
have - has - had + p.p	↔	haven't - hasn't - hadn't
will - should - can - could	↔	won't - shouldn't - can't - couldn't

◀ لاحظ أن : (v. to be) سواء كان أساسيًا أو مساعدًا فى الجملة يستخدم كالتالى :



▶ - There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, is there ? (present)
- There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there ? (past)

② تتحول (I am) إلى (aren't I ?) أما (I am not) إلى (am I ?).

▶ - I am short, aren't I ?
- I am not tall, am I ?

٣ عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم إتباع الآتى :

الفعل المساعد فى السؤال المذيل	الجملة الخبرية
,don't .... ?	فعل بدون إضافات (مضارع بسيط)
,doesn't .... ?	فعل مضاف إليه ies/es/s (مضارع بسيط)
,didn't .... ?	فعل فى التصريف الثانى (ماضى بسيط)

◂ ملحوظة :

صيغة الفعل المساعد المنفى فى السؤال المذيل يجب أن تكون مختصرة (isn't - don't).

- They like museums, don't they? (present)
- Adel speaks English well, doesn't he? (present)
- They traveled by boat, didn't they? (past)

Note : - We use a comma after the first part, and a question mark after the question tag.
- نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية بعد أول جزء وعلامة الاستفهام بعد السؤال المذيل.

Pop Quiz on Language

05 min.

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You're from Canada, ... you?
   a. are b. aren't c. do d. don't
2. He likes chocolate cake, ... he?
   a. isn't b. is c. does d. doesn't
3. They can speak three languages, ... they?
   a. can b. don't c. can't d. are
4. She .... at school yesterday, was she?
   a. wasn't b. was c. is d. did
5. You've done your homework, ... you?
   a. have b. does c. haven't d. doesn't
6. He .... smoke, does he?
   a. is b. isn't c. does d. doesn't
7. They went to the park, ... they?
   a. did b. didn't c. do d. don't

8. She is a teacher, ... she ?

a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't

9. You don't like horror movies, ... you ?

a. don't b. do c. are d. have

10. It is a dog, ... it ?

a. doesn't b. does c. don't d. isn't

11. They weren't happy with the service, ... ?

a. were they b. they were c. weren't they d. they weren't

12. They will wash the car, ... ?

a. will it b. will they c. won't they d. they will

13. He can't swim, ... he ?

a. can b. can't c. does d. doesn't

14. They live in London, ... they ?

a. do b. does c. haven't d. don't

15. She .... drink coffee, does she ?

a. does b. doesn't c. didn't d. aren't

16. He had a good time at the party, ... he ?

a. hadn't b. didn't c. doesn't d. hasn't

17. They are married, ... they ?

a. are b. aren't c. haven't d. hadn't

18. You .... know his name, do you ?

a. don't b. aren't c. haven't d. didn't

19. He .... fish, doesn't he ?

a. likes b. doesn't like c. liked d. like

20. I am a doctor, ... ?

a. aren't I b. isn't he c. doesn't she d. don't they

21. You live in Egypt, ... ?

a. didn't you b. don't you c. don't he d. doesn't you

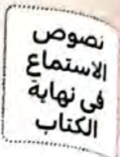
22. You will be in sixth grade next year, ... ?

a. won't he b. won't you c. 'll you d. 'll he

23. She didn't have chicken for breakfast, ... ?

a. doesn't she b. did he c. did she d. don't she

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Gravity is a .... force.
   a. space b. friction c. push d. pull
2. Gravity keeps people from .... up into space.
   a. eating b. sleeping c. riding d. flying
3. The gravity of the .... pulls the Earth towards it.
   a. sun b. moon c. stars d. sky
4. Gravity keeps planets in their space in the .... system.
   a. solar b. panels c. tire d. rope

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

force – move – touch – ground – resistance

Tension is a pull force. There is a special force called air (1) .... Air resistance is the (2) .... that works against the force of an object moving through the air. It makes a bird (3) .... more slowly. It also makes a bird not fall to the (4) .... immediately.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. He's still sleeping, ...?
   a. is he b. isn't he c. wasn't he d. was he
2. We won't be late, ...?
   a. won't we b. will we c. are we d. aren't we
3. You don't put sugar in coffee, ...?
   a. do you b. don't you c. is it d. isn't it
4. She looks tired, ...?
   a. does she b. doesn't she c. did she d. didn't she

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. will – tomorrow – He – you – call.

   ....

2. go – early - today – The students – home – can't.

   ....

Lesson 3

▶ Paper airplanes



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	tip	حافة - طرف
vertically	عموديًا - رأسيًا	glider	طائرة شراعية
dart	سهم	instructions	تعليمات

Extra vocabulary

How far ..... ?	كم بعد .... ؟	flat	مستو / مسطح
piece	قطعة	step	خطوة
ready	مستعد	triangle	مثلث
top	قمة	point	نقطة
corner	زاوية	wing	جناح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
fold	يطوى	folded	crease	يثني - يُجّعد	creased
repeat	يكرر	repeated	turn	يلف - يقلب	turned

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

fold down	يطوى لأسفل	turn over	يقلب
fold over	يطوى لأعلى	make sure	يتأكد
fold in half	يطوى لنصفين	stay longer	يظل لفترة أطول

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The Dart

1. Take a piece of paper and fold it in half vertically. Crease it.

خذ قطعة من الورق واطويها من المنتصف عمودياً وقم بثنيها.



2. Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners.

افتح الورقة. قم بطيها من أعلى الجانبين.



3. Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it.

اقلب الورقة ثم اطويها من المنتصف وقم بثنيها.



4. Fold down one wing and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again.

اطوى لأسفل أحد الأجنحة وقم بثنيها من الجزء العلوى. ثم قم بطيها لأسفل مرة أخرى وقم بثنيها مرة أخرى.



5. Repeat step 4 with the other wing. Your Dart is ready to fly!

كرر الخطوة الرابعة مع الجناح الأخر. سهمك جاهز للطيران!



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and learn how to make a dart paper airplane.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويتعلم كيف يصنع الطائرة الورقية.

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

The Glider

1. Repeat step 1 and 2 for the Dart.
كرر الخطوات (١ و ٢) للسهم.

2. Fold over the top triangle. Crease it.
اطوى لفوق المثلث العلوى وقم بثنيه.



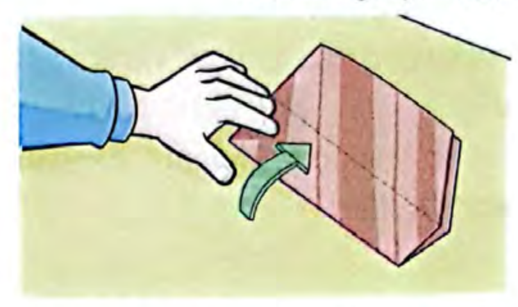
3. Fold over the top two corners again. Make sure all of the paper is flat.
اطوى الزاويتين من الجانب العلوى مرة أخرى. تأكد من أن كل الورقة مسطحة.



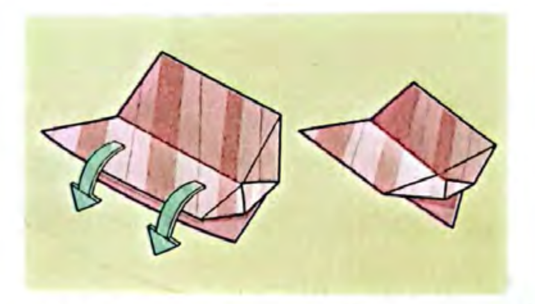
4. Fold over the tip from point to point. Crease everything well.
اطوى الحافة من نقطة إلى نقطة. اثنى كل شئ بشكل جيد.



5. Fold the plane in half.
اطوى الطائرة من المنتصف.



6. Fold down the wings. Fold from one corner to the other corner.
اطوى الأجنحة لأسفل. اطوى من زواية إلى أخرى.



7. Now fold up a small (about 1 cm) piece of the wing. Your Glider is ready to fly!
الآن قم بطى قطعة صغيرة (حوالى ١ سم) من الجناح. طائرتك الشراعية جاهزة للطيران!



• Help your child look at the pictures and read.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

• **1** **Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

dart - crease - piece - top - dirt

There are some instructions to make a dart paper airplane. Take a (1) .... of paper and fold it in half vertically. Open the paper and fold over. Fold it in half and (2) .... it. Fold down one wing and crease the (3) .... of it. Then fold it down again. Repeat the last step with the other wing. Your (4) .... is ready to fly.

• **2** **Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. the – half – in – Fold – paper.

....

2. can – a kite – fly – the sky – in – I .

....

• **3** **Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Sally about how to make a dart. Your name is Mona and your email address is mona@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is sally@yahoo.com.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• piece • fold • crease • wing • fly

From	
To	
Subject	

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4

▸ Story:
Grandpa's special shoes



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

special	مميز - خاص	astronaut	رائد فضاء
normal	طبيعى - عادى	space	الفضاء
journey	رحلة طويلة	tour	جولة
parachute	باراشوت [مظلة]	stadium	ستاد
rocket	صاروخ	trampoline	منصة البهلوان [ترامبولين]

Extra vocabulary

interesting	شيق	grandchildren	أحفاد	minutes	دقائق
side	جانب	both	كلاهما	put ... down	يخفض
feeling	شعور	above	فوق	put on = wear	يرتدى

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
normal	usual, not different عادى ، ليس مختلف
gravity	a force that pulls things to the ground قوة تجذب الأشياء إلى الأرض
astronaut	somebody who travels into space for a job شخص يسافر فى الفضاء لأداء وظيفة
tour	a journey when you visit many different places رحلة عندما تقوم بزيارة أماكن عديدة مختلفة
special	different from others and better than usual مختلف عن الآخرين وأفضل من العادى

II Listening and Reading

 **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Special shoes

It was the year 2122 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was an astronaut when he was younger. When he visited them, he always brought something interesting.

"Hello Grandpa!" said Hady.

"Do you have something to show us ?" asked Hoda.

"I always bring you something, don't I ? Look at these," he said.

He showed the children a pair of shoes.

"They don't look like normal shoes," said Hady.

"You're right," Grandpa replied. "Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoes can do." Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa. "But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?"

"I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team," Hady said.

"I would fly over the sea," said Hoda.

"Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said." Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One, two, three ... Good. Look! You can fly!"

The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew higher up. If they put their arms down by their sides, they flew down again. Hoda and Hady loved flying.

It was an amazing feeling. They could see all the city from up there.

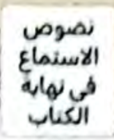
After ten minutes, Grandpa said, "OK children. Now we need to go down to the ground again."

When they were on the ground, Hoda asked, "Why doesn't everybody have shoes like these?"

"Because they are only for astronauts!" said Grandpa. "And special people too, like my favorite grandchildren!"



General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The children flew up into the ....
   a. sea b. air c. ground d. stadium
2. The children could move right or left by moving a/an ....
   a. head b. leg c. nose d. arm
3. The children loved ....
   a. running b. walking c. flying d. teaching
4. The children could see all the .... from up there.
   a. city b. town c. country d. street

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

wear – team – tour – fly – bring

Mohamed : Hello, grandpa. Do you have something to show us ?
Grandpa : Of course. I always (1) .... you something new.
Mohamed : What is it ?
Grandpa : A special shoes. When you (2) .... them, you can fly.
Mohamed : Oh! That's amazing. I would like to (3) .... over the stadium.
Grandpa : Why ?
Mohamed : To watch my favorite football (4) ....
Grandpa : Okay. Let's wear these shoes.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. would – do – What – you ?

   ....

2. would – over – sea – I – the – fly.

   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Online shopping has become one of the most important ways of shopping these days. Some people prefer online shopping, but other people don't like it. People who like it say that it saves time and they have more choices online. People can stay at home and buy things in a few minutes. People who don't

prefer online shopping say that the delivery might take a long time. The things they order may be wrong. In my opinion, online shopping is important. **It** has some advantages and disadvantages.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....

a. online shopping b. shoe

c. goods d. time

2. People who prefer online shopping say that it .... time.

a. wastes b. saves c. kills d. dislikes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

....

4. Are you with or against online shopping ? Why ?

....

• 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Flying and gravity"

Guiding elements :

• move • put down • pull • ground

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 5

▶ Jobs in science



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary


engineer مهندس


pilot طيار


scientist عالم


architect مهندس معمارى


planets كواكب


skateboard لوح تزلج

• Extra vocabulary

acceleration	تسارع	International Space Station	محطة الفضاء الدولية	festival	مهرجان
bridge	كوبرى			company	شركة
skill	مهارة	Earth	كوكب الأرض	Japanese	اللغة اليابانية
robots	اجهزة الانسان الآلى	Mars	كوكب المريخ	friction	احتكاك

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
study	يدرس / يذاكر	studied	affect	يؤثر على	affected
solve	يحل	solved	design	يصمم	designed
float	يطفو	floated	return	يرجع - يعود	returned

- **Did you know ?**
- On Earth, gravity pushes our bones together. There is no gravity in space, so some bones move apart. So astronauts who spend six months on the International Space Station can grow 3% taller! (They return to their usual size back on Earth.)

هل تعلم ؟

• على كوكب الأرض، تدفع الجاذبية عظامنا معًا. لا يوجد جاذبية فى الفضاء لذا تبتعد بعض العظام عن بعضها. لذا فأن روّاد الفضاء الذين يقضون ستة أشهر فى محطة الفضاء الدولية يصبحون أطول ٣٪ ! (يعودون إلى حجمهم الطبيعى عندما يعودوا إلى كوكب الأرض).

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

grow up	ينمو	move apart	تتباعد - تتمدد
do a job	يعمل في وظيفة	grow taller	يزداد طولاً
in groups	في مجموعات	in the day	في وقت النهار
sound interesting	يبدو شيقًا	close to	بالقرب من

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
An astronaut	want - to be	Amal wants to be an astronaut.
	stars - planets	Amal is interested in the stars and the planets.
An engineer	love - engineer	Jana would love to be an engineer.
	skateboards	Engineers help make things such as skateboards.
A pilot	decided - pilot	Karim decided that he wants to be a pilot.
	planes - stay	Karim learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. There are eight .... in our solar system.
   a. plants b. planes c. planets d. balloons
2. .... make and design things.
   a. Farmers b. Pilots c. Divers d. Engineers
3. Air .... helps planes to stay in the air.
   a. resistance b. economy c. space d. volcano
4. Astronauts spend their time on the International .... Station.
   a. Speed b. Seed c. Space d. Steam
5. You must have special .... to be an astronaut.
   a. sails b. toys c. skills d. subjects

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

II Listening and Reading

★ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Jobs in science



1. I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity – the people float all the time! I've read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing. Maybe I can visit Mars one day!



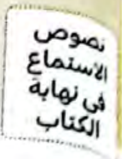
2. My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Did you know that people who do this job don't only help to build roads and bridges? They also help make things such as skateboards! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect how skateboards move.



3. I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle. The planes flew in groups, sometimes with their wings very close together. It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air!

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the texts. – ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النصوص.

General Exercises on Lesson 5



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Soha would love to be a/an ....
   a. doctor b. architect c. pilot d. engineer
2. Engineers help to build roads and ....
   a. stations b. cars c. bridges d. streets
3. Engineers makes things such as ....
   a. skateboards b. problems c. photos d. parachutes
4. Uncle Waleed says that you need to understand .... to do this job.
   a. social studies b. science c. English d. math

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does gravity do on Earth ?

....

2. Is there gravity in space ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

groups – cars – air – amazing – planes

I'm Emad. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different (1) .... flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle. The planes flew in (2) .... , sometimes with their wings very close together. It looked (3) .... There was also a small museum, and I learned how (4) .... resistance helps the planes to stay in the air!

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Esraa. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity - the people float all the time! I've read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing. Maybe I can visit Mars one day!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Mars is a ....

   a. plant b. plane c. plan d. planet

2. Living without .... makes people float all the time.

   a. push b. speed c. gravity d. friction

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is it important to study other planets ?

....

4. What does Esraa want to be ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. want – an – I – be – architect – to.

....

2. help – roads – They – to build.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Jobs in science"

Guiding elements :

- planet
- air resistance
- planes
- moves

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 6

▶ Writing an email



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

web designer	مصمم شبكات	chemistry	مادة الكيمياء
university	جامعة	physics	مادة الفيزياء

• Extra vocabulary

weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	especially	خاصة	free time	وقت الفراغ
useful	مفيد	ideas	أفكار	informal language	لغة غير رسمية (عامية)
finally	في النهاية - أخيرًا	advice	نصيحة	architecture	هندسة معمارية
				apartment	شقة سكنية

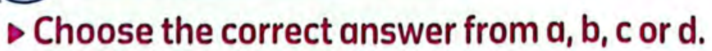
• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
end	ينهى	ended	get	يحصل على	got
organize	ينظم	organized	leave	يغادر - يترك	left
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	write	يكتب	wrote

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do well	يؤدى جيدًا	work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
in a friendly way	بأسلوب ودى	give advice about	يقدم نصيحة عن
Bye for now!	إلى اللقاء الآن !	See you soon !	اراك قريبًا !





Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى على المفردات اللغوية

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My favorite subject is ....
   a. idea b. chemistry c. project d. scientist
2. She is studying engineering at........................ .
   a. hospital b. bank c. kindergarten d. university
3. I love to read and watch movies in my........................ .
   a. place b. job c. free time d. science

II Listening and Reading

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

From :	Maged
To :	Asser
Subject :	In the future ...

Hi Asser,
Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents ?
You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know.
I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said :
First, I need to do well at school, especially in science. Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and physics. Do you know what physics is ? It's all about energy, space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.
Finally, I need to find a job at a place where people study space, like a university. Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What do you think ? Do you know what job you want to do in the future ?
Bye for now!
Maged

III Writing skill

Writing an email

▶ How to write an email to a friend :

1. You can use informal language. يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية.
2. You can write how you would speak to them. يمكنك أن تكتب له مثلما تتحدث معه.
3. Start and end in a friendly way. ابدأ وانتهى بطريقة ودية.

From :	اسم المرسل إليه
To :	اسم الراسل
Subject :	موضوع الرسالة

Hi/Hello! اسم المرسل إليه

How are you ?

موضوع الرسالة

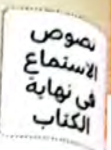
Bye for now! / See you soon!

اسم الراسل

- Help your child read the email and learn.
- Help your child learn how to write an email.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ رسالة بريد الإلكتروني ويتعلم.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني.

General Exercises on Lesson 6



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Azza want to do in the future ? ....

2. What is Azza interested in ? ....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

science – space – job – scientist – energy

Asser : What do you want to do in the future ?

Yassin : I want to be a (1) .... and study space.

Asser : Why ?

Yassin : I'm really interested in (2) .... and I want to understand it better.

Asser : What do you need to achieve your dream ?

Yassin : First, I need to do well at school, especially in (3) .... Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like math, chemistry, and physics.

Asser : What is physics ?

Yassin : It's all about (4) .... , space, and time, so it's useful if you want to study the stars and planets.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. am – interested in – I – space – really. ....

2. know – is – Do – what – you – physics ? ....

4 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Younis about a job you want to do. Your name is Sayed .Your email address is sayed@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is younis@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- interested in
- study
- physics
- difficult

From	
To	
Subject	

....

....

....

....

Lesson 7

▸ The first man to fly



Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

tower	برج	feathers	ريش
inventor	مخترع	water clock	ساعة مائية

• Extra vocabulary

including	متضمن - مشتمل	jump off	يقفز بعيدًا عن
towards	نحو - باتجاه	safely	بأمان

• Adjectives صفات

confused	مرتبك	excited	متحمس	frightened	خائف
interested	مهتم	nervous	عصبي	patient	صبور
surprised / amazed	مندهش	worried	قلق	builder	عامل بناء

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	find out	يبحث عن	found out
walk	يسير	walked	fly	يطير	flew
decide	يقرر	decided	sit	يجلس	sat
carry	يحمل	carried	find	يجد	found

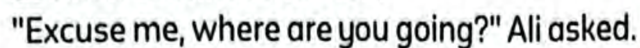
• Study these Definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
feathers	soft things that cover a bird أشياء ناعمة تغطي الطائر
land	move down until something is on the ground ينزل لأسفل حتى يصل الشئ على الأرض
invent	make or design something for the first time يصنع أو يصمم شئ لأول مرة
inventor	a person who makes or designs new things الشخص الذى يصنع أو يصمم أشياء جديدة
builder	a person who builds houses, schools, etc الشخص الذى يبنى منازل ومدارس، ..... الخ

☆ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Ali was ten years old and he lived in the 9th century. He worked on his father's farm. Every day that summer, he saw a man walk through the fields towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Ali decided to talk to the man.

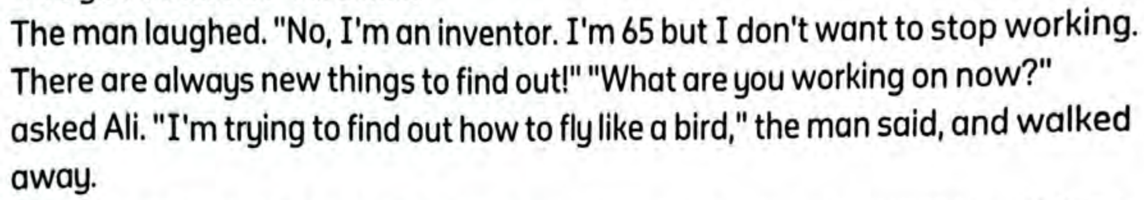
"Excuse me, where are you going?" Ali asked.



"I'm working at the old tower," the man answered.

"Are you a builder?" Ali asked.

The man laughed. "No, I'm an inventor. I'm 65 but I don't want to stop working. There are always new things to find out!" "What are you working on now?" asked Ali. "I'm trying to find out how to fly like a bird," the man said, and walked away.



The next day, Ali decided to follow the man. He was carrying something. "What are you carrying?" asked Ali. "These are my wings. They're made of wood and feathers," he said.

"Are you going to use them to fly?" asked Ali.

"Well, why don't you come with me? Then we'll know, won't we?" he said.

They walked to the tower and climbed to the top. Ali watched as the man put on his wings.

"OK, here I go!" said the man, and he jumped from the tower! Ali was amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He did not see him land.

Ali ran back down the tower and soon found the man. He was sitting on the ground. He looked unhappy.

"Are you OK?" said Ali.

"No! That hurt!" he said.

"But you flew! I saw you!" said Ali.

"I flew, but I did not land correctly," said the man." I need to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves."

Ali later found out that the man was called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. But Ali did not know that in the future, Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

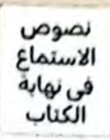
Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ.



General Exercises on Lesson 7



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Omar was .... years old.
   a. eight   b. nine   c. ten   d. eleven
2. Omar worked on his father's ....
   a. farm   b. school   c. office   d. hospital
3. Omar saw a man walk through the field towards a ....
   a. mountain   b. tower   c. valley   d. lake
4. The old man looked ....
   a. short   b. tall   c. weak   d. strong

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was Abbas Ibn Firnas ?

   ....

2. Why did Abbas Ibn Firnas become famous ?

   ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are – going – Where – you ?

   ....

2. need – study – better – I – birds – to.

   ....

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The first man to fly"

Guiding elements :

- wings   • fly   • water clock   • invented

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استخراج بعض المعلومات الموجودة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. I've read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing. Maybe I can visit Mars one day!

شرح الحل

تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستفرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

1. Amal wants to be a/an ....
   a. doctor b. astronaut c. pilot d. engineer
2. Amal has read a lot about the planet ....
   a. Jupiter b. Venus c. Mars d. Mercury
3. Amal is interested in .... and planets.
   a. stars b. sports c. houses d. animals

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle. I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air.

1. Karim wanted to be a/an ....
   a. pilot b. doctor c. vet d. astronaut
2. Karim learned how air .... helps the planes to stay in the air.
   a. pollution b. festival c. resistance d. move
3. We saw lots of different .... flying in the sky.
   a. planes b. rockets c. ships d. kites

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [وظيفتى المفضلة] و [دراجتى الجديدة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
My favorite job	Write the meaning : الواح تزلج .... علوم .... يكبر .... مهندس .... ممتع / شيق .... يؤثر على	Complete the sentences : 1. When I .... , I want to be an engineer. 2. Engineers help make things such as .... 3. You need to understand .... to be an engineer. 4. This job sounds really	Write a paragraph using the sentences : "My favorite job" ....
My new bike	يزيد .... فرامل .... يتحرك .... دراجة .... قوة .... تل	1. My father bought me a new .... 2. You use force to get the bike to .... 3. You use the .... to stop the bike. 4. I push the pedals .... quickly to .... my speed.	Write an email using the sentences : "My new bike" ....



Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Riding a bike	force - pushing	We use force to get the bike to move, by pushing the pedals.
	stop - brakes	We use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes.
	increase - speed	If we want to increase the speed, we push the pedals more quickly.
	cycle - hill	We need to cycle harder when we go up the hill.
Forces	pull - force	Tension is a pull force.
	object - slowly	Air resistance makes an object move more slowly.
	press - spring	When you press a spring, it gets smaller.
	gravity - space	Gravity keeps people from flying up into space.
Astronauts	stars – planets	Astronauts are interested in the stars and the planets.
	study	It's important to study other planets.
	Earth's problems	Studying other planets might help us solve some of Earth's problems.
Engineers	build – roads	Engineers help to build roads and bridges.
	skateboards	They help make things such as skateboards.
	need - science	We need to understand science to be an engineer.
	friction - affects	We need to know how friction and different forces affect how skateboards move.
Gravity	fall - ground	Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground.
	flying - space	Gravity keeps people from flying up into space.
	force - leaves	It's the force that makes leaves fall to the ground.
	planets - sun	Gravity keeps the planets moving around the sun.

4 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٠ جملة).

1 Riding a bike

Riding a bike is very interesting[1]. We use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals[2]. We also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes[3]. That slows down or stops the wheels[4]. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly[5].

2 A pilot

Last week, I went to an airplane festival[6]. I saw lots of different planes flying in the sky[7]. Some of them did amazing moves[8]. The planes flew in groups[9]. I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air[10].

3 Astronauts

Astronauts are interested in the stars and the planets[11]. It's important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet[12]. Studying other planets helps us solve some of Earth's problems[13]. When I grow up, I'd love to be an astronaut[14]. I have read a lot about the planet Mars[15].

4 A job I want to do in the future

My friend asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now[16]. I want to be a scientist and study space[17]. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better[18]. I need to do well at school, especially in science[19]. Then, I need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, physics and math[20].



Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

wheel	عجلة	pilot	طيار
pedal	دواسة	engineer	مهندس
brakes	فرامل / مكابح	astronaut	رائد فضاء
bike	دراجة	cycling	ركوب دراجة
tires	إطارات	pull	يسحب
rope	حبل	push	يدفع
hook	خُطاف	skateboard	لوح تزلج
spring	زنبرك	gravity	جاذبية

Language

Question tag

1. If the verb in the sentence is positive, the question tag is negative.
2. If the verb in the sentence is negative, the question tag is positive.

- This bird can fly, can't it?
- You live in Egypt, don't you?
- He played football yesterday, didn't he?
- You will be in sixth grade next year, won't you?

Test 7 on Unit 4

- نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
- التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Astronauts are interested in .... and planets.
   a. plants b. stars c. stadium d. trees
2. They study the ....
   a. moon b. planets c. sky d. sun
3. There are eight planets in our .... system.
   a. power b. water c. solar d. global
4. Astronauts stay at the International Space ....
   a. Station b. Satellite c. Cinema d. Club

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Ali go last week ? ....
2. What does Ali want to be when he grows up ? ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

architect - time - interested - job - designs

Tamer : Hello, Waleed. What career are you interested in ?
Waleed : Hello, Tamer. I am (1) .... in architecture.
Tamer : Why are you interested in this (2) .... ?
Waleed : Because I want to be an architect.
Tamer : Where does an (3) .... work ?
Waleed : He works in an office.
Tamer : What does an architect do ?
Waleed : He (4) .... buildings.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I usually take the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and the car **began** to move. When we passed the park, the car was traveling at 30 kilometers an hour.
When we got onto the highway, the car started to go a lot faster. It didn't take a long time to get to school. I thanked my dad, and I opened the car door and got out. I was early so I ran across the playground to meet my friends. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**began**" means ....
   a. started b. used c. thanked d. went

2. He usually takes the .... to school.
   a. bus   b. train   c. ferry   d. taxi

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How fast was the car traveling when they passed the park?

....

4. What did he do when he arrived at school early?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari went to Lake Nasser.		
2. The crocodile wanted to eat Jubari.		
3. The mountain was very steep.		
4. Gebel Elba is the home of the crocodile.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. The mangroves were too .... for Jubari.
2. There were many .... trees in Wadi el Gemal.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She is a doctor, ... she?
   a. is   b. does   c. isn't   d. doesn't
2. He's finished his homework, ... he?
   a. isn't   b. hasn't   c. doesn't   d. didn't
3. He .... buy a car, won't he?
   a. will   b. had   c. are   d. do
4. Ali was at school, wasn't .... ?
   a. Ali   b. he   c. him   d. her

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. did – fly - How – it – far ?

....

2. is – pull - Tension – force – a.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"A job you would like to do in the future" مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

• doctor   • medicine   • ill   • hospital

....

....

....

....

Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Karim wanted to be a .... (Suez 2023)
   a. teacher b. pilot c. vet d. farmer
2. They saw lots of different .... flying.
   a. rockets b. kites c. planes d. ships
3. There was a small ....
   a. school b. museum c. library d. cinema
4. Karim learned how air .... helps the planes to stay in the air.
   a. resistance b. pressure c. bag d. port

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Sara and her mom go ? (Cairo 2023)

   ....

2. Did Sara play hide and seek ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box. (Cairo 2023)

invented - working - bird - inventor - feathers

Tony : Hello, Sam.
Sam : Hello, Tony.
Tony : Are you a builder ?
Sam : No, I am a/an (1) ....
Tony : What are you (2) .... on now ?
Sam : I am trying to find out how to fly a kite like a/an (3) ....
Tony : What are you carrying ?
Sam : These are my wings. They're made of wood and (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. (Cairo 2023)

I am Ahmed. I decided to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky and some of them did amazing moves. They flew in groups, sometimes with wings very <u>close</u> together. It looked amazing. There was also a museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "<u>close</u>" means ....
   a. under b. above c. far d. near

2. Ahmed saw .... planes.

a. much b. any c. little d. a lot of

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

....

4. Where did Ahmed go ?

....

5 The Reader

(Qaluobia 2023)

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

	T	F
1. Jubari drank a lot of salty water.		
2. Wadi el Gemal is Wadi of the camels.		
3. Jubari walked fast at Ras Hankorab beach.		
4. Jubari ran away from the crocodile.		

B. **Complete the following sentences.**

1. Jubari's mother showed him which .... to eat.
2. Ras Hankorab beach was a place for ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. An elephant can't fly, ... ? (Ismailia 2023)

a. can't it b. can they c. can it d. can't they

2. You live in Damietta, ... you ? (Damietta 2023)

a. do b. are c. don't d. have

3. The cat has jumped very high, ... it ? (Cairo 2023)

a. haven't b. didn't c. hasn't d. isn't

4. She is a doctor, ... she ?

a. does b. is c. doesn't d. isn't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. inventor – Abbas Ibn Firnas – an – was. (Ismailia 2023)

....

2. a photographer – to – He – be – wants (Sharkia 2023)

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Your father's job"

(Ismailia 2023)

Guiding elements :

• engineer • roads • science • skateboards

....

....

....

Review on Units 3 & 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات (٣ ، ٤)

I Vocabulary

Unit 3

gold	ذهب	flax	نبات الكتان
steam	بخار	waterfall	شلال مياه
stone	حجر	salt	ملح
material	مادة خام	honey	عسل
fossil fuels	وقود حفرى	papyrus	نبات البردى
ice	ثلج	wood	خشب
dig	يحفر	tunnel	نفق
bones	عظام	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو (طائر مائى)
hole	حفرة	desert	صحراء
shovel	مجرفة	oasis	واحة
dinosaur	ديناصور	trip	رحلة قصيرة
top	قمة	gas	غاز

Unit 4

wheel	عجلة	parachute	باراشوت (مظلة)
pedal	دواسة	planet	كوكب
brakes	فرامل	gravity	الجاذبية
hill	تل	skateboard	لوح تزلج
rope	حبل	pilot	طيار
spring	زنبرك	engineer	مهندس
hook	خُطاف	bridge	كوبرى
tire	إطار	road	طريق
paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	tower	برج
astronaut	رائد فضاء	force	قوة
space	فضاء	speed	سرعة
trampoline	منصة البهلوان (ترامبولين)	push force	قوة الدفع



II Language

Unit 3

A. First and Second Conditional (If) :

	أداة الشرط		
First conditional	If إذا / لو	subject + present simple,	subject + will / won't + inf. المصدر ...
Second conditional	If إذا / لو	subject + past simple,	subject + would / wouldn't + inf. المصدر ...

- If we go to the museum, we'll see a big dinosaur skeleton.
- If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

B. Reported speech

- In reported speech, we don't use speech marks.
- The verb tenses change.
- Other words change, for example, I ⟶ he or she.

▶ "I go to the library on Mondays," said Amira.
Amira said she went to the library on Mondays.

Unit 4

Question tag

1. If the verb in the sentence is positive, the question tag is negative.
2. If the verb in the sentence is negative, the question tag is positive.

- This bird can fly, can't it ?
- You live in Egypt, don't you ?
- He didn't play football yesterday, did he ?
- They will travel to Aswan, won't they ?

Monthly Assessments

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

October Test اختبار أكتوبر

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The natural world in Africa is ....
   a. beautiful b. expensive c. lazy d. boring
2. People in Africa have made many .... things.
   a. poor b. small c. cheap d. incredible
3. The most famous wonders in .... are the Sphinx and the Pyramids.
   a. Egypt b. China c. America d. France
4. .... come from all over the world to visit them.
   a. Thieves b. Pilots c. Traders d. Tourists

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is your favorite sport?
   ....
2. How often do you practice football?
   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

bees - food - cut down - people - natural

The kingfisher visited the lizard. The lizard was in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when people came to the mangrove forest, they (1)........................ the trees. It was difficult for the lizard to find (2)........................ to eat. The dugong came up and told his friends the kingfisher and the lizard that the (3)........................ were back. They could hear trucks and people shouting. They heard some (4)........................ buzzing around the tree.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Some people say that horses can be good friends if they are treated well and with great care. Horses are beautiful animals which can run fast for long distances. People like watching them because they are strong and powerful. They have long legs and big eyes that they can see almost all the way around them. We can know how old a horse is by looking at its teeth. Horses can live up to 20 to 25 years and generally sleep standing up, in this way if they are attacked by animals, they can **run away** fast. They like eating corn, grass, hay and sometimes apples and carrots.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined phrase "**run away**" means ....
   a. shout b. play c. escape d. talk
2. Horses .... see well.
   a. can't b. can c. shouldn't d. are

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

....

4. How can horses be good friends?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari followed his father for his first year.		
2. Jubari lived in Wadi el Gemal with his mother.		
3. Jubari and Subira are turtles.		
4. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari learned to .... from predators.
2. Gazelles' favorite food is the desert ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... told you this story already.
   a. is b. are c. were d. have
2. Thanks for the chocolates .... you sent.
   a. who b. which c. where d. what
3. I was ill, ... I didn't go to school.
   a. or b. because c. so d. but
4. I eat healthy food .... I want to be fit.
   a. but b. or c. so d. because

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. bees – three – were – There – buzzing.

....

2. it – easy – Is – to be – photographer – a wildlife ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements.

"Mangrove trees"

Guiding elements :

pollen - flowers - bees - plants

....

....

....

....

....

Monthly Assessments

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

November Test اختبار نوفمبر

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.**

1. We are a .... family.
   a. tired   b. bad   c. healthy   d. sick
2. My sister Doaa plays ....
   a. football   b. tennis   c. squash   d. volleyball
3. My mom .... to work.
   a. runs   b. flies   c. drives   d. walks
4. My dad rides his ....
   a. taxi   b. bike   c. car   d. bus

2 **Listen and answer the questions.**

1. Where do the tourists come from?
   ....
2. Where do the tourists like staying?
   ....

3 **Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

show – Archaeologists – caves – different – water

There are many man-made wonders in Africa. In North Africa, there are paintings on rocks and in (1) .... which people made thousands of years ago. They often (2) .... animals and people. (3) .... think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past because some of the paintings show animals such as crocodiles that live in (4) ....

4 **Read the following text and answer the questions.**

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel **happy** !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**happy**" is ....
   a. hungry   b. sad   c. tired   d. excited
2. We need .... and oxygen in our body.
   a. nutrients   b. games   c. pencils   d. desks

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do veins do?
   ....
4. How can vitamin D help the humans?
   ....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. There are acacia trees in the desert.		
2. Jubari met the turtle in Ras Hankorab Beach.		
3. The mangrove forest was too sandy for Jubari.		
4. Jubari tried seagrass and it was delicious.		

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari followed his .... for the first year.
2. Jubari was very ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. That's the city .... we met.
   a. who b. which c. where d. what
2. I have a daughter .... is a doctor.
   a. who b. which c. where d. what
3. I .... finished my homework yet.
   a. have b. hasn't c. haven't d. wasn't
4. The children .... the lost puppy already.
   a. finds b. is finding c. have found d. has found

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. River – This – the Zambezi – enormous – is on – waterfall.

....

2. place – an amazing – The – African – is – continent.

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about storm-chasers to your friend Nour. Your name is Mazen and your email address is mazen@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nour@gmail.com.

Guiding elements :

• exciting • frightened • strong • extreme weather

From	
To	
Subject	

....
....
....
....
....
....



1. Blogs

How to write a blog :

كيف تكتب مدونة :

1. Write about something you like and enjoy.
   اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
   اكتب لقراءك كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات (I'm, it's) وكلمات مثل (awesome) و (cool).

3. Use exclamation points (!) and emojis .
   استخدم علامات التعجب (!) ورموز تعبيرية.

4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
   اعطِ رأيك ودع قراءك ليعطوا أرائهم.

5. Check that your spelling is correct.
   تأكد من أن الهجاء صحيح.

A special trip

Sarah BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE 

Thursday, 17th May

A special trip

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.



2. Diary

Tips to write a diary entry : نصائح عند كتابة مذكرة / يوميات

1. Write the date. ١. اكتب التاريخ.
2. You should start with "Dear Diary". ٢. يجب أن تبدأ بـ (مذكرتي العزيزة)
3. You should write about how you felt. ٣. يجب أن تكتب عن كيف كان شعورك.
4. You should use formal language. ٤. يجب أن تستخدم لغة رسمية.
5. You should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".
   ٥. يجب عليك أن تستخدم الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" و "me".
6. You should describe the places / events. ٦. يجب عليك أن تصف الأماكن / الأحداث.

Essam

April, 23rd

Dear Diary,

I live with my family in an apartment in Cairo. My apartment is big and there are many rooms. There are three bedrooms, a wide living room, a modern kitchen and two bathrooms. My mother has a modern oven in the kitchen. There is more space in the living room, so we have a big TV. We also have a fantastic balcony.

3. Text Messages

1 Tips to write a text message conversation : نصائح لكتابة رسالة نصية عبر محادثة

- **Use phrases to talk about plans** - استخدم العبارات للتحدث عن الخطط
  ex. Are you free on the weekend ? - هل أنت متفرغ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟
  That sounds like fun! / That sounds great! / Cool! / Awesome!
  - هذا يبدو ممتعًا! / يبدو رائعًا! / رائع! / عظيم !
- **Use set phrases for making suggestions** - استخدم عبارات محددة لتقديم الاقتراحات
  ex. How about / What about meeting up ? - ما رأيك أن نتقابل ؟
  Let's meet at 3. - هيا نتقابل في الساعة ٣ .
- **Use emojis to make the conversation fun** - استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لجعل المحادثة ممتعة
  Use emojis to show things you want to represent, e.g. 🌵 a cactus for the desert.
  - استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لإظهار الأشياء التي تريد عرضها، على سبيل المثال : صورة صبار 🌵 لتدل على الصحراء.

2 How to write a message :

كيفية كتابة رسالة نصية

Dear .... ,
I want to ....

- عزيزى .... ،
- أريد أن ....

....

موضوع الرسالة

....

What do you think ?
I hope you like my ideas !
(Your name)
....

- ماذا تعتقد ؟
- أتمنى أن تعجبك أفكارى !
(اسمك)
....

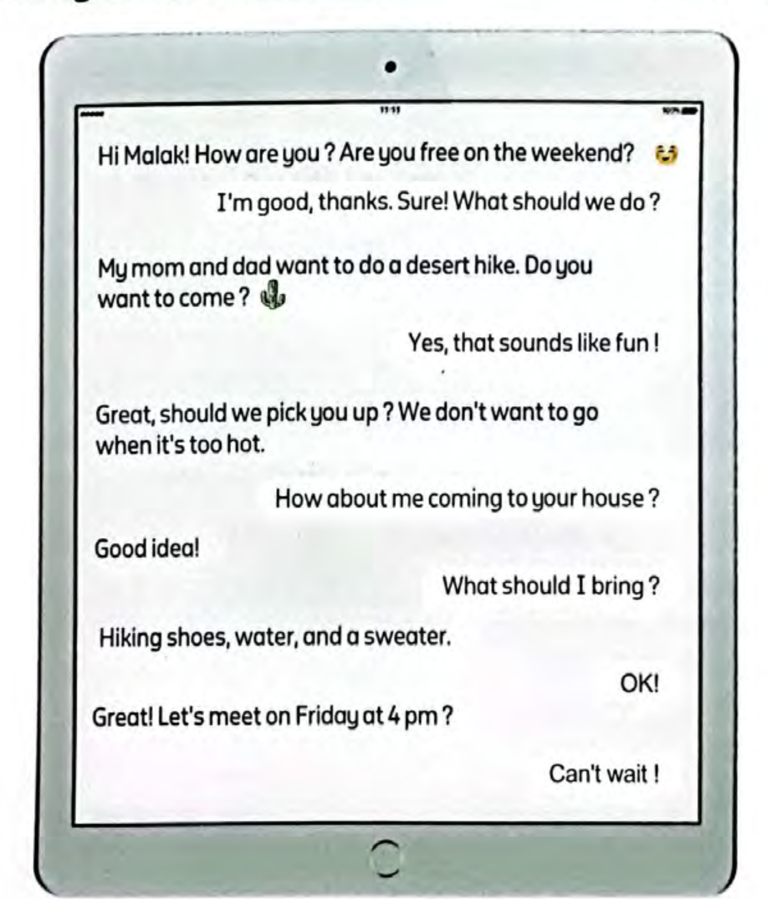
3 Text messages :

أهم الرسائل النصية

Dear class,
I want to tell you how to stay healthy.
First, we should eat healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are very important for our bodies. We shouldn't have much sweets. Secondly, we should do exercises every day to keep fit. Finally, we should sleep well and drink much water.
I hope you like my ideas !
Nader

4 Text messages conversation :

أهم الرسائل النصية عبر محادثة



Non-Fiction Reader

Incredible places around the world
أماكن مذهلة حول العالم



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Vocabulary

incredible	مذهل - مدهش	describe	يصف
popular	محبوب - مشهور	Mount Everest	جبل افرست
divers	غطاسين - غواصين	rise	يرتفع
giant	عملاق	island	جزيرة
Scottish	اسكتلندى	side	جانب
Pacific Ocean	المحيط الهادى	canyon	أخدود
slopes	منحدرات	surf	يتزلج - يتزحلق
discover	يكتشف	erode	ينحت
erupt	يثور (البركان)	hill	تل
nearly	تقريبًا - ما يقرب	name after	يسمى بإسم
man-made	من صنع الإنسان	Opera House	دار الأوبرا
Bibliotheca	مكتبة	space	مساحة
Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط	harbor	ميناء بحرى
apartment buildings	مبانى سكنية	terrace	شرفة
below	اسفل	sports stadium	استاد / ملعب رياضى
view	منظر	design	يصمم
architect	مهندس معمارى	nest	عش (الطيور)
sound	صوت	vision	رؤية
institute	معهد	media	الصحافة والإعلام
pieces	قطع	newspaper	جريدة
social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى	unusual	غريب
traditional	تقليدى	tunnel	نفق



Incredible places around the world

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Which places are named after colors ?

ما الأماكن التي سميت باسم الألوان؟

There are some amazing places around the world which are very famous. For example, we all know the Sahara Desert, Mount Everest, and the Amazon rainforest. Here we look at some other incredible places which you might not know.

هناك بعض الأماكن الرائعة حول العالم وهى مشهورة جدًا. على سبيل المثال، نعلم جميعًا الصحراء الكبرى وجبل إيفرست وغابة الأمازون المطيرة. هنا نلقى نظرة على بعض الأماكن الرائعة الأخرى التي قد لا تعرفها.

Sharm El Luli-Marsa Alam



Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. Its clean, blue waters make it very popular with tourists. Divers also love going here because you can see many colorful fish. You can sometimes see turtles, too. The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.

شرم اللولى - مرسى علم : يعد شاطئ اللولى من أجمل شواطئ البحر الأحمر. تجعلها مياهها الزرقاء النظيفة تحظى بشعبية كبيرة بين السياح. يحب الغواصون أيضًا الذهاب إلى هنا لأنه يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأسماك الملونة. يمكنك أحيانًا رؤية السلاحف أيضًا. يقع الشاطئ على بعد ٦٠ كيلومترًا جنوب مرسى علم.

The Giant's Causeway - Northern Ireland



The Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland. It's made of around 40,000 black rock columns which rise from the sea. Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish Island of Staffa across the sea!

جسر العملاق - أيرلندا الشمالية : يقع الجسر العملاق فى أيرلندا الشمالية. يتكون من حوالى ٤٠٫٠٠٠ عمود صخرى أسود يرتفع عن سطح البحر. اكتشف العلماء أنها تشكلت عندما ثار بركان منذ ٥٠ - ٦٠ مليون سنة، لكن بعض الناس يقولون أن العمالقة صنعوها حتى يتمكنوا من الوصول إلى جزيرة ستافا الإسكتلندية عبر البحر!

• Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

The Matterhorn - Switzerland



Some people say this is the most beautiful mountain in Europe. It's 4,478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. It's like this because of the way the ice eroded the rock. About 3,000 people climb the mountain every year.

جبل ماترهورن - سويسرا : يقول البعض أن هذا هو أجمل جبل فى أوروبا. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٤,٤٧٨ مترًا وله شكل هرم بأربعة جوانب. يبدو كذلك بسبب الطريقة التى تسبب بها الجليد فى تآكل الصخور. ما يقرب من ٣٠٠٠ شخص يتسلقون الجبل كل عام.

Waimea Canyon - Hawaii, USA



The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA, although they are more than 7,000 kilometers away in the Pacific Ocean. The Waimea Canyon here is an amazing place. A river has eroded a canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,000 meters deep. Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.

وادى وايميا هاواى، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية : جزر هاواى هى جزء من الولايات المتحدة، على الرغم من أنها تقع على بعد أكثر من ٧٠٠٠ كيلومتر فى المحيط الهادئ. يعد وادى وايميا هو مكان رائع. تسبب نهر فى تآكل وادى يبلغ طوله ١٦ كيلو مترًا وعمقه حوالى ١٠٠٠ متر. وايميا هى كلمة بلغة هاواى تعنى المياه الحمراء. سميت بهذا بسبب التربة الحمراء التى تجعل النهر يبدو أحمر اللون.

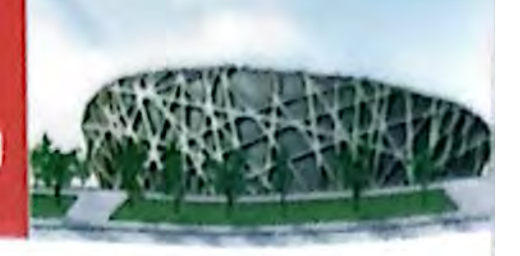
Cerro Negro-Nicaragua, South America



Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua, and it has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years! However, it has not erupted for more than 20 years, so it is not usually dangerous. Its name means black hill and many people climb up its black slopes. When they get to the top, many people surf back down again!

سيرو نيغرو - نيكاراغوا، أمريكا الجنوبية : سيرو نيغرو هو بركان فى نيكاراغوا، وقد ثار أكثر من ٢٠ مرة خلال ١٦٠ سنة الماضية! ومع ذلك، لم يثور منذ أكثر من ٢٠ عامًا، لذا فهو ليس خطيرًا فى العادة. اسمه يعنى التل الأسود والعديد من الناس يتسلقون منحدراته السوداء. وعندما يصلون إلى القمة، يتزلج العديد من الأشخاص مرة أخرى!

Incredible buildings around the world



 Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

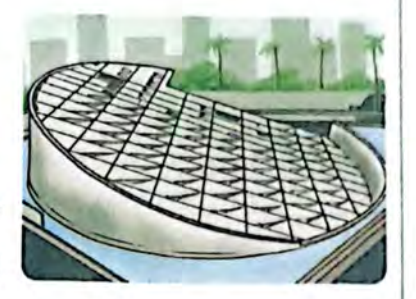
Which of these buildings is the newest ?

أى من هذه المبانى هو الأحدث؟

We all know the famous man-made places around the world like the Pyramids of Giza and the Sydney Opera House, but every year, people are always trying to build more and more amazing buildings. Here we look at some other incredible man-made places which you might not know.

نعلم جميعًا الأماكن الشهيرة التى صنعها الإنسان فى جميع أنحاء العالم مثل أهرامات الجيزة ودار أوبرا سيدنى، ولكن كل عام، يحاول الناس دائمًا بناء المزيد من المبانى المذهلة. هنا نلقى نظرة على بعض الأماكن الأخرى الرائعة التى من صنع الإنسان والتى قد لا تعرفها.

Bibliotheca Alexandrina, Alexandria, Egypt



Opened in 2010, the famous Bibliotheca Alexandrina has space for eight million books! The beautiful modern building by the Mediterranean is the same shape as Alexandria's harbor, and has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.

مكتبة الإسكندرية، محافظة الإسكندرية، مصر تم افتتاح مكتبة الإسكندرية الشهيرة فى عام ٢٠١٠، وتتسع لثمانية ملايين كتاب! المبنى الحديث الجميل المطل على البحر الأبيض المتوسط هو نفس شكل ميناء الإسكندرية، وبه جدار بارتفاع ٣٢ مترًا مع تدوينات من اللغات عبر التاريخ.

Habitat 67, Montreal, Canada



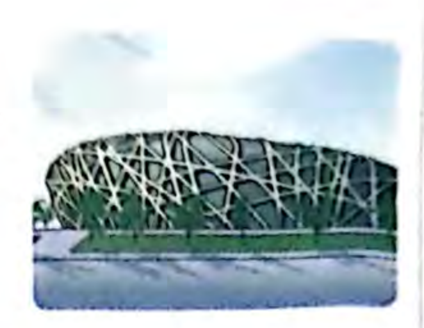
Many of us live in tall apartment buildings where we have people living above or below us. But Habitat 67 is very different to most apartment buildings! Here, the 148 apartments look like a big children's puzzle! Built in 1967, its apartments all have a terrace with amazing views over the city.

مسكن ٦٧، مونتريال، كندا : يعيش الكثير منا فى مبانٍ سكنية شاهقة حيث يعيش الناس فوقنا أو تحتنا. لكن مسكن ٦٧ يختلف تمامًا عن معظم المبانى السكنية! هنا، تبدو الشقق الـ ١٤٨ وكأنها لغز كبير للأطفال! تم بناء جميع شققه فى عام ١٩٦٧، وتضم جميعها تراساً (شرفات) توفر إطلالات رائعة على المدينة.

• Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

Beijing National Stadium, China



There are many amazing sports stadiums around the world, but not many are designed by artists! Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games with some architects, and now 80,000 people can visit it for sports events. Most people call it the Birds Nest because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs!

ملعب بكين الوطني، الصين : هناك العديد من الملاعب الرياضية الرائعة حول العالم، ولكن ليس الكثير منها مصمم من قبل فنانين! صمم الفنان الصيني آي ويوي استاد بكين الوطني لدورة الألعاب الأوليمبية لعام ٢٠٠٨ مع بعض المهندسين المعماريين، والآن يمكن لـ ٨٠،٠٠٠ شخص زيارته للأحداث الرياضية. يسميه معظم الناس عش الطيور لأنه يشبه المكان الذي تضع فيه الطيور بيضها!

Institute for Sound and Vision, the Netherland



The architects of this museum like color! The building of the Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glass. Opened in 2006, the museum teaches you all about the media, including television, radio, newspapers and social media.

معهد الصوت والرؤية، هولندا : مهندسو هذا المتحف يحبون الألوان! يتكون مبنى معهد الصوت والرؤية من مئات القطع الزجاجية الملونة. تم افتتاح المتحف في عام ٢٠٠٦، ويعلمك كل شيء عن وسائل الإعلام، بما في ذلك التلفزيون والراديو والصحف ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.

General Exercises on Non-Fiction Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False)

	T	F
1. Slope is ground that is higher at one end than the other.	☐	☐
2. Sharm El Luli isn't popular with tourists.	☐	☐
3. Cerro Negro is a volcano.	☐	☐

B Complete the following sentences.

1. Sharm El Luli is popular with ....
2. The Giant's Causeway is in........................ .
3. Bibliotheca Alexandria has space for........................ books.

Fiction Reader

Jubari searches for home

جوباري يبحث عن منزل

BY Jennifer Farmer



The characters الشخصيات



The main idea الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة

- Animals need their mothers more than anything else.
  - تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أمهاتها أكثر من أى شئ آخر.
- Animals are happiest in the ecosystem they are born in.
  - تكون الحيوانات أسعد فى النظام البيئى الذى ولدت فيه.

Main characters الشخصيات الرئيسية للقصة

Jubari 

 Subira

The setting المكان والزمان

Places الأماكن

▸ Wadi el Gemal	وادى الجمال	▸ Ras Hankorab beach	شاطئ رأس حنكوراب
▸ Mangrove forest	غابة المانغروف	▸ Gebel Elba	جبل علبة

• Help your child learn about the characters and the main idea. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الشخصيات والفكرة الرئيسية.

Important Vocabulary

The Beginning

• Important vocabulary

Pages (88 - 92)

search	يبحث	place	مكان
dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس (غزال الصحراء)	show	يبين - يوضح
Eastern desert	الصحراء الشرقية	rest	راحة
life	حياة	everywhere	في كل مكان
year	سنة	quickly	بسرعة
follow	يتبع	run away	يجري بعيدًا
brave	شجاع	stay away	يبقى بعيدًا
dangerous	خطير	laugh	يضحك
predator	مفترس	mean	يقصد / يعني
camels	جمال	soon	لاحقًا / قريبًا
look for	يبحث عن	acacia trees	شجر السنط
son	ابن	daffodil	زهرة النرجس البري
perfect	مثالي	special	خاص - مميز
leaves	أوراق الشجر	seeds	بذور
come back	يعود		

The middle

• Important vocabulary

Pages (93 - 97)

north	شمال	sand	رمال
ground	أرض	turtle	سلحفاة
soft	ناعم	home	مسكن - مأوى
hooves	حوافر	Ras Hankorab beach	شاطئ رأس حنكوراب
voice	صوت بشري	salty	مالح
dugong	حيوان الاطوم (بقر البحر)	mangrove forests	غابات أشجار المانغروف
south	جنوب	steep	شديد الانحدار
mountains	جبال	seagrass	عشب بحري
east	شرق	tired	متعب
thirsty	عطشان		

The End

• Important vocabulary Pages (98 - 103)

Nubian ibex	الوعل/التيس النوبى	Lake Nasser	بحيرة ناصر
Gebel Elba	جبل علبة (فى مصر)	dead	ميت
top	قمة	crocodile	تمساح
west	غرب	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
resource	مصدر - مورد	curious	محب للاستطلاع/ فضول
delicious	لذيذ (الطعم)	sandy	رملى
right	صحيح	agree	يوافق

• Identify new words التعرف على الكلمات الجديدة

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
acacia tree شجرة السنط	An acacia tree is a species نوع/فصيلة of tree which grows in hot dry places.
brave شجاع	If you are brave, you are not afraid خائف in dangerous or difficult situations.
daffodil زهور النرجس البرى	Daffodils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs بصيلة نبات.
hoof/hooves حافر/حوافر	A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.
Nubian ibex الوعل (التيس النوبى)	The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa (شمال أفريقيا) and the Middle East (الشرق الأوسط).
salty مالح	Food with a lot of salt in it، tastes salty.
seagrass عشب بحرى	Seagrass is a species of plant which grows under the sea.
steep شديد الانحدار	A steep hill goes up and down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.

1 The beginning
بداية القصة

The life of Jubari in its early years حياة جوبارى فى سنواته الأولى



- Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.

- ولد جوبارى غزال الدوركاس فى وادى الجمال فى صحراء مصر الشرقية. تبع جوبارى والدته سوبيرا للسنة الأولى من حياته. أطلعته على النباتات التى يأكلها و مكان الاستراحة فى الأيام الحارة.



- Jubari was very brave. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators. He learned to run away very quickly.

- كان جوبارى شجاعًا جدًا. أراد الذهاب إلى كل مكان واللعب مع كل الحيوانات. ومع ذلك، علمته سوبيرا اى الحيوانات تكون خطيرة وكيفية الابتعاد عن الحيوانات المفترسة. تعلم الهرب بسرعة كبيرة.



• One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Mom, what is this place called ?"

Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son. It means "Wadi of the Camels". "Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels ?" Jubari said. "We are gazelles." Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

• ذات يوم، كان جوبارى وسوبيرا يبحثان عن الطعام. سأل جوبارى والدته : "أمى، ما اسم هذا المكان ؟ " أجابت سوبيرا : "هذا وادى الجمال يا بنى". يعنى وادى الجمال. قال جوبارى : "لماذا نعيش فى وادى الجمال ؟ نحن غزلان". ضحكت سوبيرا. "إنه اسم فقط يا بنى. العديد من الحيوانات تعيش هنا. وادى الجمال المكان الملائم للغزلان".



• "Why ?" Jubari said.

"Well," said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too".

"Why do they need us ?" Jubari said.

"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow".

• قال جوبارى : "لماذا ؟" قالت والدته : "حسنًا، هناك نباتات خاصة هنا. أولًا، هناك طعامنا المفضل، زهرة النرجس الصحراوى! وهناك أيضا شجرة السنط. أوراقها توفر لنا الطعام والماء على مدار السنة، لذلك لا نحتاج أبدًا للشرب، وأشجار السنط بحاجة إلينا، أيضًا." قال جوبارى : "لماذا يحتاجون إلينا ؟" "نأكل بذورها ونأخذها إلى أماكن جديدة، ثم تنمو المزيد من أشجار السنط".

- "I understand," said Jubari. "But is there a place called Wadi of the Gazelles ?"

"I don't know," said his mother.

"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.

"OK," said his mother. "But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!".

- قال جوباري : "أنا أفهم. ولكن هل هناك مكان يسمى وادي الغزلان ؟ " قالت والدته : "لا أعرف". قال جوباري : "سأبحث عنه." قالت والدته : "حسناً، لكن تذكر كل الأشياء التي علمتك إياها وعُد قريباً!"





Pop Quiz on "The beginning"

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.		
2. Jubari followed his father.		
3. Jubari was not brave.		
4. Jubari wanted to go everywhere.		
5. Jubari wanted to play with all the animals.		
6. Jubari learned to run away very quickly.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari and Subira live in the Wadi of the ....
2. Jubari and Subira are ....
3. Jubari was very ....
4. Jubari wanted to play with all the ....
5. Jubari learned to run away very ....
6. Wadi el Gemal is in Egypt's Eastern ....

2 The Middle

منتصف القصة

Jubari's trip to search for wadi of the gazelles

رحلة جوبارى للبحث عن وادى الغزلان



- Jubari decided to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly.

  Soon, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves were under water !

  Jubari was thirsty, so he tried to drink. "Yuck!" he said. The water was very, very salty. Then he heard a voice.

  "You can't drink that water! It's sea water."

- قرر جوبارى الذهاب شرقًا. كان متحمسًا. لذلك ركض بسرعة كبيرة. سرعان ما رأى بعض أنواع الأشجار الجديدة. سار نحو الأشجار وتوقف. كانت حوافه تحت الماء ! كان جوبارى عطشانًا فحاول أن يشرب. قال : "ياك !" كان الماء مالحًا جدًا. ثم سمع صوت . "لا يمكنك شرب هذا الماء ! إنه ماء البحر."



- Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him.

  "I'm Donga. I'm a dugong. I live here in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea." "I'm thirsty," said Jubari.

  "Would you like some of my seagrass ?" said Donga.

  Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty, too. "Thank you," he said. "But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' ?" "I'm sorry," said Donga. "I don't know."

- نظر جوبارى ورأى حيوانًا أبيض كبير فى الماء. كان ينظر إليه. "أنا دونجا. أنا بقرة البحر. أعيش هنا فى غابة المانغروف بالقرب من البحر الأحمر." قال جوبارى : "أنا عطشان". قال دونجا : "هل ترغب فى بعض من أعشاب البحر الخاصة بى؟" جرب جوبارى الأعشاب البحرية، لكنها كانت مالحة جدًا أيضًا. قال: "شكرًا لك. لكن غابة المانغروف مالحة للغاية بالنسبة لى! هل تعرف أين يمكننى أن أجد وادى الغزلان ؟" قال دونجا : "أنا آسف، لا أعرف."



- Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran. Soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly. His hooves were going into the ground. Then he heard a voice. "Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."

- بعد ذلك، ركض جوبارى شمالًا. ركض وركض. سرعان ما وصل إلى مكان كانت فيه الأرض بيضاء وناعمة جدًا. سار ببطء. كانت حوافه تتسلل إلى الأرض. ثم سمع صوتًا. "من فضلك لا تمشى هنا. بيضاتى فى الرمال."



- Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.

  "I'm sorry," said Jubari. "What is this place ?"

  "It's my home," said the turtle. "Ras Hankorab beach."

  "It's very nice," said Jubari. "But it's not a good place for gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."

- نظر جوبارى. كانت سلحفاة بنية اللون. قال جوبارى : "أنا آسف. ما هذا المكان ؟"

  قالت السلحفاة : "إنه موطنى. شاطئ رأس حنكوراب". قال جوبارى : "إنه جميل للغاية. لكنه ليس مكانًا جيدًا للغزلان. لا يمكننا الركض بسرعة هنا لأن الرمال ناعمة جدًا."

- Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains. "I might see the Wadi of Gazelles' from the top," he thought.

  Jubari climbed the biggest mountain. It was very steep. His legs became very tired.

- قرر جوباري التوجه جنوبًا. ركض وركض. لقد جاء إلى بعض الجبال. هو يفكر، "قد أرى وادى الغزلان من الأعلى." صعد جوباري أكبر جبل. كان شديد الانحدار. تعبت ساقيه جدًا.





Pop Quiz on "The middle"

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. The turtle's eggs were in the sea.		
2. Ras Hankorab is a good place for gazelles.		
3. Jubari saw Donga in water.		
4. Jubari couldn't drink sea water.		
5. Donga could know where to find the Wadi of the Gazelles.		
6. The turtle was brown.		
7. Jubari could run fast in soft sand.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. The .... lives in Ras Hankorab beach.
2. Jubari .... the biggest mountain.
3. The mountain is too .... for Jubari's legs.
4. The dugong lives in the .... forest by the Red Sea.
5. Jubari tried seagrass but it was too ....
6. Jubari's .... were going into the ground.

3 The End
نهاية القصة

Wadi el-Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles

وادي الجمال هو أفضل مكان للغزلان



- Then he saw an animal, a Nubian ibex.

  Jubari said, "Hello! Have you been to the top of this mountain ?"

  "Yes," said the ibex. "This is Gebel Elba. It's my home."

  "It's too steep for my legs," said Jubari. "Can you see the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' from the top ?"

  "I don't know that place," said the ibex. "But I can see a very big lake to the west."

- ثم رأى حيوان ما، الوعل النوبي. قال جوباري : "أهلًا ! هل صعدت إلى قمة هذا الجبل ؟" قال الوعل : "نعم، هذا هو جبل علبة. إنه موطني". قال جوباري : "إنه شديد الانحدار على ساقي. هل يمكنك رؤية وادي الغزلان من الأعلى ؟" قال الوعل : "لا أعرف ذلك المكان لكن يمكنني رؤي بحيرة كبيرة من الغرب."



- Jubari thought, "I've gone east. I've gone south and north, but I haven't gone west."

  He ran and ran. After a long time, he came to a very big lake.

  "What is this place ?" he said.

  "This is Lake Nasser," said a voice. "It's a man-made lake. The people made it because they needed water. It's an important resource for them. But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they ?"

- فكر جوباري، "ذهبت شرقًا، ذهبت جنوبًا وشمالاً، لكنني لم أذهب غربًا". ركض وركض. بعد فترة طويلة، جاء إلى بحيرة كبيرة جدًا. قال : "ما هذا المكان ؟" قال صوت : "هذه بحيرة ناصر. إنها بحيرة من صنع الإنسان. صنعها الناس لأنهم بحاجة إلى المياه. إنها مورد مهم لهم. لكن الغزلان اللذيذة لا تحتاج إلى الماء للشرب، أليس كذلك ؟"

- Jubari couldn't see who was speaking. Then a dead tree in the water moved. It wasn't a tree! It was an animal!"

"What are you ?" said Jubari.

"I'm a crocodile," said the animal. "This is my home, and I'm hungry."

Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big teeth. It was too dangerous! He ran and ran.



- لم يستطع جوبارى رؤية من يتحدث . ثم تحركت شجرة ميتة فى الماء. لم تكن شجرة لقد كان حيوانًا! قال جوبارى : "من تكون ؟" قال الحيوان : "أنا تمساح. هذا موطنى، وأنا جائع." والدة جوبارى علمته عدم البقاء بالقرب من الحيوانات ذات الأسنان الكبيرة. كان الأمر شديد الخطورة! ركض وركض.

- .... all the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

على طول الطريق إلى وادى الجمال.

- He looked for Subira. "Mom! Mom!" he cried. "Jubari, my brave and curious son. You are home," his mother said. Smiling, she asked, "Did you find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' ?" "No, I didn't. But I found a lot of other places." "Did you like them ?" his mother asked. "Not all of them. The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees."



- بحث عن سوبيرا. صرخ : "أمى ! أمي !" قالت والدته : "جوبارى، ابنى الشجاع والفضولى. أنت فى موطنك." وسألت مبتسمة : "هل وجدت وادى الغزلان ؟" "لا، لم أجد. لكننى وجدت الكثير من الأماكن الأخرى." سألت والدته : "هل أعجبوك ؟" "ليس كلهم. كانت غابات المانغروف مالحة للغاية. كان الشاطئ رمليًا جدًا وكانت الجبال شديدة الانحدار. ولم يكن هناك الكثير من أشجار السنط."



• "Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us to run and run!"

"Yes," said Jubari. "You were right. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

"I'm so happy that you agree," she smiled.

• حسنًا، لدينا الكثير من أشجار السنط هنا، والصحراء ملائمة لنا للركض والركض! قال جوباري : "نعم، أنت كنت على حق. وادى الجمال هو المكان الملائم للغزلان". ابتسمت قائلة : "أنا سعيدة للغاية لأنك توافق".

05 min Pop Quiz on "The end"

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari looked for Subira.		
2. Jubari was curious.		
3. The mangroves were too sandy.		
4. The beach was too salty.		
5. Gebel Elba is the home of Jubari.		
6. Jubari went to Lake Nasser.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. The mountains were too ....
2. Subira was so .... that her son agreed with her.
3. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for ....
4. There are a lot of .... trees in Wadi el Gemal.
5. Gebel Elba is the .... of the Nubian ibex.
6. The .... tree which Jubari saw in water was a crocodile.

General Exercises on Story

A

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Lake Nasser is an important resource of water.		
2. The acacia trees grow in hot, dry places.		
3. The Nubian ibex lives in the mountains.		
4. Jubari was born in Gebel Elba.		
5. Subira is Jubari's mother.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Food with a lot of salt in it tastes ....
2. A .... is the hard foot of an animal.
3. Jubari .... his mother for the first year of his life.
4. Jubari walked .... in Ras Hankorab.
5. Ras Hankorab .... isn't a good place for gazelles.

B

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Wadi el Gemal is in Egypt's Eastern desert.		
2. Jubari wasn't brave.		
3. Subira taught Jubari how to sleep.		
4. Jubari learned to run away very quickly.		
5. Wadi el Gemal means Wadi of the Camels.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari returns to the .... of the Camels.
2. Jubari thought the beach was too .... for gazelles.
3. Jubari was a .... son.
4. Jubari went to many places to .... for the Wadi of the Gazelles.
5. In the east, the water and the .... were salty.

C

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Few animals live in the Wadi of the Camels.		
2. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles.		
3. If you are brave, you are not afraid in danger.		
4. Seagrass is a plant which grows under the sea.		
5. Lake Nasser is a very small lake.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari knew how to .... away from predators.
2. The .... wanted to eat Jubari.
3. The turtle's eggs were in the ....
4. The desert daffodil is the favorite food for ....
5. It is very difficult to climb a .... hill.

D

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Subira showed Jubari which plants to eat.		
2. Jubari thought the mangroves were too salty for gazelles.		
3. Jubari thought the mountain was too steep for gazelles.		
4. Jubari thought the wadi wasn't perfect for gazelles.		
5. Jubari left the Wadi of the Gazelles.		

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Subira taught Jubari which .... were dangerous.
2. Gebel Elba is the home of Nubian ....
3. Jubari thought the .... was too dangerous for gazelles.
4. .... lives in the mangrove forest.
5. Jubari couldn't .... the Wadi of the Gazelles.

تدريب تلقائي على القصة المقررة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el ....

a. Gazelles b. Gemal c. Lizards d. Lions

2. Jubari was very............................ He wanted to go everywhere.

a. lazy b. nervous c. brave d. busy

3. Wadi el Gemal is the .... place for gazelles.

a. perfect b. boring c. bad d. ugly

4. Daffodil and .... trees are gazelles' favorite food.

a. seed b. rose c. flower d. acacia

5. Jubari learned to run away very quickly from ....

a. predators b. birds c. insects d. pets

6. The turtle's eggs were in the ....

a. ocean b. sea c. tree d. sand

7. Jubari saw............................ in the mangrove forest.

a. ibex b. fox c. dugong d. lion

8. The turtle was............................ .

a. yellow b. brown c. red d. blue

9. The mountains were too ....

a. soft b. sticky c. steep d. wet

10. The mangroves were too ....

a. sandy b. salty c. sweet d. steep



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1



General Exercises on lesson 1

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The mangrove trees are important. They help the environment in many ways. They protect the living things and the non-living things. They have deep roots. The deep roots stop the sand washing away. The mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. The forests are also home for many animals.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area.

In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

General Exercises on lesson 4

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

A kingfisher was visiting the lizard in a mangrove tree. The kingfisher flew down and sat next to the lizard. The lizard was sad and the kingfisher was worried because people came and cut down some trees. The mangrove trees are important.

General Exercises on lesson 5

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Most people have three meals every day. The main meals are breakfast, lunch and dinner. I usually have beans and eggs for breakfast, meat and rice for lunch and yogurt for dinner. To stay healthy, we should eat healthy food. We shouldn't drink too many fizzy drinks.

• Listen and answer the questions.

The heart is one of the most important organs so we should keep it healthy. It pumps blood around the body. It weighs less than half a kilo. It beats over 100,000 times a day.

General Exercises on lesson 6

. Listen and answer the questions.

Noha has a healthy family. Her sister Amira plays tennis and her sister Dina plays football. Her mom walks to work and her dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. Dina and Amira like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

General Exercises on lesson 7

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then they will be hungry. Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard. There was no rain, and the plants were brown. The cub had a strange feeling in his stomach : hunger.

Test 1 on Unit 1

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Mangrove trees can grow in salt

water. They are important. They protect the marine ecosystem. The leaves of mangrove trees take more carbon dioxide from the air than other trees. Bees can make a lot of honey from the flowers of mangrove trees.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Friendship is very important. I have ten friends. I like all of them, but my best friend is Mazin. He is very kind and helpful.

Test 2 on Unit 1

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

The kingfisher and the lizard were friends. One day, the kingfisher flew to a mangrove tree where it found the lizard. The lizard was sad because people came and cut down some trees. Trees protect the worms and the fish, they eat them and it could be difficult to find food. The kingfisher was worried.

• Listen and answer the question.

Our heart beats about 70 times in a minute. A man's heart is heavier than a woman's heart. A woman's heart beats faster than a man's heart. The human heart weighs less than half a kilo. The blue whale has the largest heart of any mammals in the world.



Unit 2

General Exercises on lesson 1

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls and volcanoes in it. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. It is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA ! Some of the sand dunes can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

General Exercises on lessons 2 & 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

The natural world in Africa is beautiful. There are also amazing man-made wonders. People in Africa have made incredible things. The Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx and the Valley of the Kings are the most important man-made wonders in Egypt. People from all over the world come to visit them.

General Exercises on lesson 4

Listen and answer the questions.

Ali and his parents went to the USA. They flew in a big plane. They went to the USA to study hurricanes. Ali took some photos of the hurricane when the wind was strong and loud.

General Exercises on lesson 5

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Volcanoes are natural wonders. When they erupt, there is ash and fire. During volcanoes, smoke fills the air. People have to run away to stay safe. When lava and ash mix with mud, this makes good soil.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

There are a lot of useful inventions in our world. The most important invention

is the mobile phone. The mobile helps us in our life. We can do a lot of things with mobiles. We can communicate and use the internet.

General Exercises on lesson 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches. It is about 200 million years old. It is made of red and brown sandstone. The Rainbow Bridge has become a National Monument since 1910.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

The Valley of the Kings is in Luxor. It is an important monument. People from all over the world come to visit it every year.

General Exercises on lesson 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Yassin is a hot air balloon pilot. Yesterday a book fell out of his bag. The book was about hot air balloon flights. A young girl saw the book and gave it to him. Yassin thanked her.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Salma loves nature. She went to the park with her family. She was very happy. She saw beautiful birds and flowers. Salma likes taking photographs of birds and flowers.

Test 3 on Unit 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Rwanda is a beautiful country in Africa. It has one of man-made wonders of Africa, the Canopy Walk. Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure on the Canopy Walk. The bridge was built in 2010. It's in the highest part of the trees, so visitors can see monkeys and birds.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

There are many different means of transport. The most comfortable means of transport is the plane. People sometimes travel on the hot air balloon. I have never used a hot air balloon before.

Test 4 on Unit 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa. Every year, many people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. One of the most famous man-made wonders in Egypt are the Pyramids of Giza. Tourists come from all over the world to visit the Pyramids of Giza and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.



General Exercises on lesson 1

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

There are differences between coal and gas. Coal is a solid. We can pick up a solid object, like our bag. A solid object has a fixed shape. We can't usually see gases, although some have a pale color. Gases move and change shape.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it boiled. Some of the water turned to steam. Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water froze and turned to ice.

General Exercises on lesson 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Ahmed and I are going into the mountains with dad. There were dinosaur bones in the mountains. I never saw them but my friend Ahmed was digging a hole there and he found some bones. We decided to visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo. If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

The children talked to Grandpa. The children decided to look for dinosaur bones. They imagined finding dinosaur bones. The children found some animal bones. They planned to go to the museum.

General Exercises on lesson 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Flax is a tall plant. It has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

General Exercises on lesson 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

There are many physical properties. Texture is the feel of something. Odor is the smell of something. Mass is how heavy something is. Honey is sticky, soft and smooth.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Fatma is excited because her cousin Soad has just arrived from Alexandria. Soad is blind, which means she cannot see. They play a game together.

General Exercises on lesson 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

I am really excited about the trip. I am going with my family to Luxor. So we are planning a three-day trip. And I have prepared well for the trip. On the first day, we will just stay in the place where we are living. On the second day, we will visit Karnak Temple. On the third day, we will visit the Valley of the Kings. And we will come back by train. It will be a very beautiful trip.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Zein and Omar went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. They learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. A man told them that there are a lot of different birds living at Wadi El Rayan. We saw some of the birds and our favorite was the flamingo.

Test 5 on Unit 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Water is a liquid. If we freeze water,

it turns into ice. Ice is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid. When we boil water, it turns into steam.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt, there were a lot of natural resources. The ancient Egyptians used honey to make medicines. They used papyrus plants to make paper and other objects.

Test 6 on Unit 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Nada is a healthy girl. She plays tennis. To stay healthy, she eats healthy food like fruit and vegetables. Nada has one brother.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

My friend Ramy lives next to his school, so he walks to school every day. At school, he learns many subjects such as math and science.

 **Unit** 

Unit 4

General Exercises on lesson 1

• Listen and answer the questions.

You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

General Exercises on lesson 2

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Gravity is the pull force that brings objects towards the Earth. Gravity keeps people from flying up into space. The gravity of the sun pulls the Earth and all of the other planets towards it and keeps them in their space in the solar system.

General Exercises on lesson 4

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Grandpa showed the children a pair of shoes. They flew up into the air. They could move right or left moving an arm to that side. The children loved flying. It was an amazing feeling. They could see all the city from up there.

General Exercises on lesson 5

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name is Soha. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Waleed. His job sounds really interesting. Engineers help to build roads and bridges. They also help make things such as skateboards. Uncle Waleed says that you need to understand science to do this job. For example, you need to know friction and different forces affect how skateboards move.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

On Earth, gravity keeps people from flying up into space. There is no gravity in space, so some bones move apart. So astronauts who spend six months on the International Space Station can grow 3% taller! They return to their usual size back on Earth.

General Exercises on lesson 6

• Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Azza. I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know.

General Exercises on lesson 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Omar was ten years old. He worked on his father's farm. Every day that

summer, he saw a man walk through the field towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Omar decided to talk to the man. He asked him about his work. He discovered that the man was an inventor.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. But Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

Test 7 on Unit 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Astronauts are interested in stars and planets. They study the planets. There are eight planets in our solar system. Astronauts stay and live in the International Space Station.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. I went to a flying festival last week with my family. I saw many planes flying in groups. I want to be a pilot when I grow up.

Test 8 on Unit 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air !

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Last week, Sara and her mom went to the park. Sara enjoyed her time very much. She met her cousins and played hide and seek. She liked playing this game.

Monthly Assessments (October Test)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. The most famous man-made wonders in Egypt are the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. Tourists come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Sports are very important for keeping us fit. My favorite sport is football. I practice football three times a week. My favorite football player is Mohammed Salah.

Monthly Assessments (November Test)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

We are a healthy family. My sister Doaa plays tennis and my sister Rehab plays football. My mom walks to work and my dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. My sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

2. Listen and answer the questions.

Egypt is a wonderful country in Africa. There are a lot of tourist places in Egypt. Tourists from all over the world come to visit Egypt and see the tourist places. Tourists like staying in hotels and swimming in the seas.



Answers of Topics | إجابات الموضوعات



Unit 1

General Exercises on lesson 1

Nabq National Park

Nabq is a very big national park in South Sinai. Along the coast, there is a mangrove forest. Mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. Trees grow out of the sea there. They're amazing roots. The roots grow high out of the water. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. They helps us with global warming.

General Exercises on lessons 2 & 3

Amazon rainforest

The Amazon rainforest is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Birds and animals help the trees as they take seeds from place to place in the forest to grow new trees. Animals eat custard apple fruit to survive. So it's very important. It's important to protect our forests to help the environment.

General Exercises on lesson 4

Mangrove trees

Mangrove trees are very important for a lot of animals and birds. They're a safe home for hundred animals, birds and insects. There are many marine animals live among their roots. The trees' roots grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. Birds and animals eat their fruit to survive. Bees help to carry the pollen among the flowers to grow new plants. Mangrove trees are important for the environment.

General Exercises on lesson 5

Circulatory system

Our circulatory system has veins, arteries and our heart. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to the heart. The blood carries the nutrients and oxygen that we need in our body. Our heart pumps blood all the time. It beats about 70 times a minute. It's important to keep our heart healthy. Keep moving, walking, running and riding bikes to help your heart.

General Exercises on lesson 6

From : seif@gmail.com

To : ahmed@gmail.com

Subject : how to be healthy

Dear Ahmed,

How are you ? It's important to be healthy. You should eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables. Don't eat a lot of chocolate. It's not healthy. Doing sports is important to keep healthy. Do exercise because it's good for your heart. Relax and have good sleep at night. Try to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to have healthy style life.

Yours,

Seif

Test 1 on Unit 1

Mangrove forests

Mangrove forests are very important for the marine ecosystem. Mangrove trees grow in salt water. They grow high out of the water. The roots of mangrove trees help them get oxygen. Mangrove thick leaves stop the plants losing water when it is very hot. Mangrove trees help



with global warming. The forests are a safe home for many animals. So the mangrove trees help the environment in many ways.

Test 2 on Unit 1

An ecosystem

An ecosystem is all animals and plants in an area. It can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things interact with non-living things. In an ecosystem, the different species need each other to survive. The different species make a community.



Unit 2

General Exercises on lesson 1

The Sahara Desert

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries. It's about nine millions square kilometers. Some of the sand dunes are very high. They can be about 180 meters high. The Sahara Desert is a very dry place. Some plants and animals live in Sahara Desert. People also have lived there for thousands of years, too.

General Exercises on lessons 2 & 3

Man-made wonders of Africa

People have made many incredible things in Africa. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt. The Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx and the temples of Abu Simbel are man-made wonders in Egypt. People come from all over the world to learn about Egypt's history. Archaeologists think that Sahara in Africa wasn't dry because of the paintings show animals that live in water.

General Exercises on lesson 4

Storm-chasers

Storm-chasers are people who travel to places where a hurricane is fore cast. Storm-chasers are interested in forms of extreme weather. They get close to the extreme weather event to study it. They have cameras to photograph these events. Floods, thunderstorms, and dust storms are examples of the extreme weather. Storm-chasers travel to many countries to be close to the extreme events. It's amazing!

General Exercises on lesson 5

The volcanoes of Java

The volcanoes of Java is on the pretty island of Java. Everything there is made of lava! There are more than thirty-nine volcanoes. When they erupt, there's ash and fire. Smoke fills the air. The lava and ash mix with mud flows. This makes soil good for growing food. Farmer can grow many kinds of crops there.

General Exercises on lesson 6

Rainbow Bridge

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is 200 million years old. It's on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It's made of red and brown sandstone. A river eroded a hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch. If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse or walk. It's interesting.

General Exercises on lesson 7

A balloon ride

I have got tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. I'll go with my family. We'll see balloons in lots of colors. I'm very excited. I think about the festival. There's a hot air balloon pilot. It's a perfect weather today with no rain and a gentle wind. Soon, we're flying

over the city of Luxor. We see green fields and sandy deserts. There are palm trees, dunes and mountains. It's very amazing!

Test 3 on Unit 2

The Pinnacles

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are made of white limestone which the rain and wind had eroded into different shapes. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time to visit them is in the early morning or late afternoon.

Test 4 on Unit 2

The Ngorongoro Crater

The Ngorongoro Crater is in Tanzania. It's the largest volcanic crater in the world. It was formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. There are wetlands and forests inside the crater. You can see lots of different animals, birds and plants there.



Unit 3

General Exercises on lesson 1

Natural resources

Natural resources are raw materials. We can get natural resources from nature. Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable. We can get solar energy from the sun to make electricity. We also use natural resources to make things. We use wood to make tables. We use stone to build houses. Some natural resources are non-renewable like coal.

General Exercises on lesson 3

Gold in ancient Egypt

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. Salt, flax and gold were very important natural resources in ancient Egypt. Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautiful objects made from gold. People in ancient Egypt found gold in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground.

General Exercises on lesson 4

Honey

Honey is very important for us. It was an important natural resource in ancient Egypt. People can use honey for many different things. Honey is a liquid. It's sticky, soft and smooth. We use honey to make food taste sweet.

General Exercises on lesson 5

From : tarek@yahoo.com

To : youssif@yahoo.com

Subject : a science experiment

Dear Youssif,

How are you ? I'd like to tell you about a science experiment. Yesterday, we did an experiment about different liquids in the science class. We had small jars with different liquids like honey, milk, water and maple syrup. We also had some tall glass jars and a plastic syringe. We poured the honey slowly in the glass jar, then we slowly poured the maple syrup. The syrup made a layer on top of the honey.

Yours,

Tarek

General Exercises on lesson 6

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

Last Friday, we went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful. There are two lakes there. There are a lot of birds living there. We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. The sound of water falling is very loud.

Test 5 on Unit 3

Resources in ancient Egypt

Flax, salt, gold and copper were very important resources in ancient Egypt. People in ancient Egypt used flax to make linen for clothes, as well as strong ropes. Salt was also a very important resource. It was useful in medicine and agriculture. Copper was another important resource. People used it to make tools, cooking pots and knives.

Test 6 on Unit 3

A trip to Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

I went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi EL Rayan last summer. I went there with my friends by bus. We took many wonderful photos. I had lunch there with my friends. We learned a lot about Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls. There are two lakes there; one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. There are a lot of different birds living there.



Unit 4

General Exercises on lesson 1

Riding a bike

Riding a bike is very interesting. We use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. We also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. The brakes can slow down or stop the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

General Exercises on lesson 3

From : mona@yahoo.com

To : sally@yahoo.com

Subject : how to make a dart

Dear Sally,

How are you ? I went to tell you about how to make a dart. Take a piece of paper and fold it in half vertically. Crease it. Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it. Fold down the wings and crease them. Then fold them down again and crease them. Your dart is ready to fly.

Yours,

Mona

General Exercises on lesson 4

Flying and gravity

Gravity is the pull force. It brings objects towards the Earth. Gravity keeps people from flying up into space. On Earth, gravity pushes our bones together. There is no gravity in space. Gravity usually pulls thing to the ground.

General Exercises on lesson 5

Jobs in science

Astronauts, pilots and engineers are very important. The astronaut is always interested in stars and planets. It's very important to study other planets because this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. Being an engineer is really interesting. You need to understand science to do this job. Being a pilot is not an easy job, but it's amazing. Sometimes, the planes do amazing moves. The air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air.

General Exercises on lesson 6

From : sayed@gmail.com
To : younis@gmail.com
Subject : a job I want to do

Dear Younis,

How are you ? I want to tell you about a job I want to do in the future. I'm really interested in space and I want to understand it better so I want to be a scientist. I need to study chemistry, math and physics in university to be a scientist. I like math but I think chemistry and physics are difficult.

See you soon !

Sayed

General Exercises on lesson 7

The first man to fly

Abbas Ibn Firnas was probably the first person to fly using wings so he became very famous. He was an important person. He invented many things. He invented water clocks.

Test 7 on Unit 4

A job you would like to do in the future

We must think about the future and get ready for it so I think about my future job. In the future, I would like to be a doctor. I'm interested in science. To be a doctor, I need to study medicine, chemistry and physics in university. I want to be a doctor to help people who are ill. Doctors work in many places like hospitals.

Test 8 on Unit 4

Your father's job

My father is an engineer. His job is really interesting. My father helps to build roads and bridges. He also helps make things such as skateboards. My father says that you need to understand science well, to be a good engineer.



Lesson 1. Our School Trip to Nabq National Park.

نبق هى محمية طبيعية كبيرة جدًا فى جنوب سيناء. على طول الساحل هنا، يوجد ٤،٨ كيلومترات من غابات المانغروف، وهى الأكبر فى البحر الأحمر. ذهبنا إلى هناك لمعرفة سبب أهمية غابات المانغروف للنظام البيئى البحرى. عندما وصلنا إلى الشاطئ رأينا الأشجار تنمو من البحر! معظم الأشجار لا يمكن أن تنمو فى المياه المالحة، لكن أشجار المانغروف يمكن أن تنمو. لديهم جذور مذهلة تنمو عاليًا خارج الماء. تساعدهم هذه الجذور فى الحصول على الأكسجين. عندما لمست أوراق الأشجار، شعرت أنها سميكة للغاية. تمنع هذه الأوراق الخاصة النباتات من فقدان الماء عندما يكون الجو حارًا جدًا.

لقد تعلمنا أن أشجار المانغروف تساعد البيئة بعدة طرق. تحمى أشجار المانغروف الكائنات غير الحية والكائنات الحية فى النظام البيئى البحرى. عندما تكون هناك عواصف، فإن جذورها العميقة تمنع انجراف الرمال بعيدًا. تعتبر الغابات أيضًا موطنًا آمنًا للعديد من الحيوانات.

تعيش مئات الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والحشرات والحيوانات الأخرى فى غابات المانغروف. يمكننا أن نرى العديد من الأسماك الصغيرة تسبح فى المياه الضحلة بين جذور الأشجار، حيث لا تستطيع الأسماك الكبيرة والحيوانات الأخرى صيدها. هذه هى الطريقة التى تساعد بها أشجار المانغروف الأسماك الصغيرة على البقاء على قيد الحياة.

إن أوراق شجر المانغروف تقوم بإمتصاص ثانى أكسيد الكربون من الهواء بأربع مرات أكثر من أنواع الشجر الأخرى. يساعدنا شجر المانغروف فى مشكلة الإحتباس الحرارى.

كما رأينا أزهارًا صفراء صغيرة على أشجار المانغروف. كان هناك الكثير من النحل والحشرات الأخرى عليهم. يصنع النحل عسلًا مميزًا من أزهار المانغروف. يقول الناس إن عسل المانغروف يساعد فى محاربة بعض الأمراض والاوبئة أكثر ما أعجبنى عن غابات المانغروف هو رؤية جميع الفصائل المختلفة تكون مجتمعًا.

تتفاعل النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات مع بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة. لم أر من قبل أنواعًا كثيرة مختلفة من الفراشات ! كان يومًا رائعًا.

Lesson 4. In the mangrove tree

طائر الرفراف كان يزور صديقته القديمة، السحلية، فى شجرة مانغروف. طار وجلس بجانب السحلية.

قال طائر الرفراف للسحلية : "تبدين حزينة". "ماذا جرى؟" "جاء الناس وقطعوا بعض الأشجار. تقوم الأشجار بحماية الديدان والأسماك التى نأكلها، ولكن من الصعب الآن العثور على طعام."

"أوه لا!" قال طائر الرفراف، بدا عليه القلق. "أنا جائع."

فجأة، ظهرت بقرة البحر (الأطوم) خارجة من البحر

قالت السحلية متفاجئة : "مرحبًا" قالت بقرة البحر : "مرحبًا يا سحلية. مرحبًا ياطائر الرفراف. لدى بعض الأخبار السيئة."

"ما هى؟ هل عاد الناس مرة أخرى؟" قال طائر الرفراف. "نعم هم كذلك. ألا يمكنك سماعهم؟" أجابت بقرة البحر.

استمع السحلية وطائر الرفراف باهتمام. سمعوا الشاحنات وصياح الناس. "أوه لا. صرخت السحلية : " كم عدد أشجار المانغروف التى سيقطعونها؟"

فى تلك اللحظة، سمعت الحيوانات صوت طنين. كان هناك ثلاثة من النحل يقومون بالطنين حول الشجرة.

طارت أحدى النحلات بالقرب من الحيوانات الأخرى وقالت : "الناس لن يقطعوا المزيد من الأشجار. سيقومون بزراعة أشجار مانغروف أخرى. لقد فهموا أنهم أرتكبوا خطأ. لقد تعلموا أن أشجار المانغروف مهمة، لذا فهم يزرعون أشجار جديدة. أحضرونا إلى هنا لمساعدة الأشجار على النمو."

"كيف ستساعدون الأشجار على النمو؟" سألت بقرة البحر، مرتبكة. "نحمل حبوب اللقاح من نبات أو شجرة إلى أخرى وهذا يساعدهم فى إنتاج البذور." أوضحت النحلة. "فهل ستتحسن الحياة هنا؟" سأل طائر الرفراف. "نعم، ستتحسن" أجابت النحلة بإبتسامة "جيدا!" قالت السحلية والرفراف معًا. "نحن جائعون!"

Lesson 5. Are plants similar to humans ?

فى بعض النواحى، يشبه البشر النباتات. فكر فى نظام الدورة الدموية لدينا. بدلًا من الماء، تحمل الأوردة والشرايين الدم حول أجسامنا. تقوم الشرايين بنقل الدم بعيدًا عن القلب. الأوردة تحمل الدم إليه. العناصر الغذائية والأكسجين التى نحتاجها موجودة فى دمنا. لكننا لا نستخدم غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون مثل النباتات. يحتاج البشر أيضًا إلى ضوء الشمس. لا يمكننا صنع طعامنا، لكننا نحصل على فيتامين د من ضوء الشمس. هذا يمكن أن يساعد فى حمايتنا من الإصابة بالمرض. كما أن ضوء الشمس يجعل الكثير من الناس يشعرون بالسعادة!

Your heart

قلبك ينبض أكثر من ١٠٠،٠٠٠ مرة فى اليوم! لذلك من المهم أن تحافظ على صحة قلبك. عند المشى أو الجرى أو السباحة أو ركوب الدراجة، فإنك تجعل قلبك يعمل بجهد أكبر. إذا كنت تمارس الرياضة بانتظام، فإن قلبك يعمل بشكل أفضل ويمكنك الحصول على المعادن والعناصر الغذائية والأكسجين التى تحتاجها بسهولة أكبر.

Lesson 6. Seleem and his family

سليم ولد صحى. يحب الرياضة. يلعب رياضة التنس وكرة القدم وكرة السلة. يأكل طعامًا صحيًا مثل الفاكهة والخضروات والأرز. لا يأكل الكثير من الشوكولاتة لأنه يعلم أن هذا الطعام ليس صحيًا. فى المساء يريد الاسترخاء فيقرأ كتابًا.

يقول سليم : "أمارس الكثير من التمارين لأنها مفيدة لى". "قلبك مهم جدًا لذا عليك أن تحافظ عليه بصحة جيدة. "سليم على حق، من المهم ممارسة الرياضة.

لديه عائلة سليمة (تتمتع بصحة جيدة) أيضًا. أخته أميرة تلعب رياضة التنس وأخته دينا تلعب كرة القدم. تمشى والدته إلى العمل ووالده يركب دراجته، لكنهما لا يمارسان الرياضة. تحب أخواته الاستماع إلى الموسيقى للاسترخاء. من المهم أن تسترخى قلوبنا أيضًا.

Lesson 7. Waiting for the rain

كان يومًا آخر طويلا حارًا فى المراعى. كان شبل الأسد مع والدته، وكان مستلقيًا فى ضوء الشمس. لكن والدته بدت قلقة.

وقالت : "آمل أن تمطر قريبًا."

"لماذا تريدين أن تمطر؟" سأل شبل الأسد.

"الجو جميل ودافئ. يمكننا اللعب فى أشعة الشمس".

أجابت : "إذا لم تمطر، فلن ينمو العشب، ثم سنجوع."

بدأ شبل الأسد يضحك. "ماذا تقصدين ؟ نحن نأكل اللحوم وليس العشب!" جرى بعيدًا ليلعب مع إخوته وأخواته، لكن والدته نظرت إلى السماء وكانت قلقة.

بعد أسبوعين، كان الجو لا يزال حارًا، وكانت الأرض صلبة. لم يكن هناك مطر، وكانت النباتات بنية اللون. الآن، أصبح لدى شبل الأسد شعور غريب فى معدته : الجوع. سأل والدته : "هل يمكننا اصطياد أرنب لنأكله؟"

قالت بحزن: "لا يمكننى العثور على أى أرانب. ذهبت بعض الأرانب إلى أماكن أخرى. قد تكون بعض الأرانب ميتة."

سأل شبل الأسد : "لماذا؟"

"لأنه لا يوجد أى مطر. بدون مطر، لا يمكن للعشب أن ينمو. إذا لم ينمو العشب، فإن الأرانب ليس لديها أى طعام".

أجاب شبل الأسد : "إذن ليس لدينا أى طعام!" الآن فهم. "ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟"

"يجب أن ننتظر المطر. إذا لم تمطر، يجب أن ننتقل إلى مكان مختلف".

قال شبل الأسد الذى كان قلقًا جدًا الآن. " فلنذهب! لا يمكننا البقاء هنا بدون طعام!"

لقد شمت والدته الهواء. رأت سحابة رمادية رقيقة تبدأ بالتحرك عبر السماء الزرقاء.

قالت : "دعونا ننتظر يومًا آخر."

ذهب شبل الأسد إلى الفراش جائعًا، لكن فى الصباح، استيقظ لسماع المطر يتساقط على الأرض.

ركض إلى الخارج مع إخوته وأخواته، ولعبوا فى الماء البارد. ابتسمت الأم الأسد.

هى سألت : "هل تحب المطر الآن، يا شبل؟"

قال شبل الأسد بسعادة : "نعم، أحب! الآن سينمو العشب، وستعود الأرانب، ولن نشعر بالجوع بعد الآن!"



Unit 2

Lesson 1. National wonders of Africa

القارة الأفريقية مكان رائع، بها جبال وصحارى وبحيرات ووديان وغابات مطيرة. هناك سواحل جميلة وشلالات مياه وبراكين. لديها مجموعة من أشهر العجائب الطبيعية فى العالم. دعونا نقرأ عن أربعة منها.

فوهة نجورونجورو

فوهة نجورونجورو فى تنزانيا هى أكبر فوهة بركانية فى العالم. تشكلت عندما ثار بركان منذ ملايين السنين. تبلغ مساحتها حوالى ٢٦٠ كيلومتر مربع. يبلغ ارتفاع جوانب الفوهة أكثر من ٦٠٠ متر، وفى الداخل توجد أراضى رطبة وغابات. يمكنك أن ترى الكثير من الحيوانات والطيور والنباتات المختلفة هناك. يعيش هناك العديد من الحيوانات الكبيرة، كما تشمل الأسود والفيلة والجاموس والفهود.

شلالات فيكتوريا

يقع هذا الشلال الضخم على نهر زامبيزى، على الحدود بين زامبيا وزيمبابوى. يبلغ عرضها ١٧٠٨ متر وارتفاعها ١٠٨ متر. كل دقيقة، يسقط أكثر من ٥ ملايين متر مكعب من المياة فى وادى كبير شكلته المياه. عندما تسقط المياه تحدث ضوضاء كثيرة!

جبل كليمنجارو

يتكون من ثلاثة براكين. يعتقد العلماء أنه لم يثور منذ ٣٦٠ ألف سنة. جبل كليمنجارو هو أعلى جبل فى أفريقيا بارتفاع ٥٨٩٥ مترًا. كل عام، يتسلقه حوالى ٢٥٠٠٠ شخص، لكنه صعب. الجبل كبير جدًا ويحتوى على الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة. يبدأ فى المراعى الحارة. فى مكان أعلى، توجد غابات استوائية مطيرة، وفى القمة يوجد ثلج وجليد.

الصحراء الكبرى

الصحراء الكبرى هى أكبر صحراء حارة فى العالم (القطب الشمالى والقطب الجنوبى أكبر حجمًا لكنهما صحارى باردة). تغطى إحدى عشرة دولة وتبلغ مساحتها تسعة ملايين كيلومتر مربع - أى بحجم الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية! يمكن أن يصل ارتفاع بعض الكثبان الرملية إلى حوالى ١٨٠ مترًا. على الرغم من أنه مكان جاف جدًا، إلا أن بعض النباتات والحيوانات تعيش هنا، ويعيش الناس هنا منذ آلاف السنين أيضًا.

Lesson 3. Man-made wonders of Africa

العالم الطبيعي في أفريقيا جميل، لكن الناس في هذه القارة صنعوا أشياء مدهشة أيضًا. توجد بعض أهم العجائب التي صنعها الإنسان في مصر : أهرامات الجيزة وأبو الهول ومعابد أبو سمبل ووادي الملوك. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم لزيارة هذه الأماكن والتعرف على تاريخ مصر. ولكن هناك الكثير مما يمكن رؤيته في إفريقيا.

في شمال إفريقيا، توجد رسومات على الصخور وفي الكهوف صنعها الناس منذ آلاف السنين. غالبًا ما تظهر الحيوانات والأشخاص. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن الصحراء لم تكن جافة في الماضي لأن بعض الرسومات تظهر حيوانات مثل التماسيح التي تعيش في الماء.

في زيمبابوي، توجد بقايا زيمبابوي العظمى، وهي مدينة مهمة تم بناؤها بين القرنين الحادي عشر والخامس عشر. كان لها جدران حجرية كبيرة جدًا. وباع الناس هنا الكثير من الأشياء الى بلدان مختلفة حول العالم.

اثر أحدث نصب تذكاري في جنوب أفريقيا. هو النصب التذكاري للغة الأفريكانية وتكون من أعمدة حجرية وافتتح في عام ١٩٧٥. تطورت اللغة الأفريكانية عندما جاء أناس من بلدان أخرى إلى إفريقيا. اللغة تحتوي على كلمات من العديد من البلدان المختلفة، وتستخدم الآن في جنوب إفريقيا وناميبيا.

يمكن لزوار رواندا الاستمتاع بمغامرة مذهلة في الغابات المطيرة في ممشى كانوبي في حديقة نايونجوي الوطنية. تم بناء الجسر في عام ٢٠١٠. يبلغ أرتفاعه ١٦٠ مترًا و٧٤ مترًا فوق سطح الأرض. إنه في الجزء العالي من الأشجار، لذلك يمكن للزوار رؤية القرود والطيور.

Lesson 4. The storm-chaser

غالبًا ما كان والدى كمال يذهبان إلى بلدان أخرى من أجل عملهما. عادة، كان كمال وأخواته الأصغر يقيمون في المنزل مع أجدادهم.

قبل عامين، قال والدا كمال : "يمكنك القدوم معنا عندما نذهب للعمل في المرة القادمة."

كان كمال متحمسًا جدًا لأن والديه مطاردي عواصف ! وهم الناس الذين يسافرون إلى أماكن حيث الإعصار أو أي شكل من أشكال الطقس القاسي الذي يتنبأ بحدوثه. فهم يقتربون جدآ من حدث الطقس القاسي لدراسته.

سافر كمال ووالديه على متن طائرة كبيرة إلى الولايات المتحدة حيث يمكنهم دراسة الأعاصير.

"كيف يمكنني مساعدتكم أثناء العمل؟" سألهم كمال عندما وصلوا. قالوا: "يمكنك التقاط بعض الصور لنا"، وأخذوا شيئًا من الحقيبة. كانت كاميرا جديدة! كان كمال قد شهد عواصف رعدية في مصر ولكن ليس إعصار. كان مثير للغاية. عندما كان الإعصار على بعد عشرين كيلومترًا، انطلقوا لرؤيته. التقط كمال بعض الصور للإعصار من نافذة السيارة بينما كان والديه بالخارج لتدوين ملاحظات حول حجم الإعصار. كانت الرياح قوية جدًا وصاخبة جدًا

و التقط كمال العديد من الصور.

"هل أنت خائف ؟" سأل والد كمال.

قال كمال : "لا، لأنني أعلم أنك ستحافظ على سلامتي."

عندما اقتربت العاصفة منهم، ابتعدوا.

منذ تلك الرحلة، ذهب كمال إلى العديد من الأماكن الأخرى مع والديه.

لقد شاهد ثلوجًا كثيفة في الجبال وفيضانات في السودان وعواصف ترابية مذهلة في الصحراء. لقد تعلم الكثير عن أسباب الطقس القاسي، مثل الاحتباس الحراري، والتقط مئات الصور.

في العام الماضي، قالت والدته، "لماذا لا ترسل بعض الصور لهذه المسابقة عبر الإنترنت؟"

لذلك أرسل كمال الصور التي تراها أدناه. فاز بالجائزة الأولى لمصوري الأطفال، ووجد أيضًا أنه أحد أصغر مطاردي العواصف في العالم!

Lesson 5. The Volcanoes of Java

اسمحوا لي أن آخذكم إلى جزيرة جافا الجميلة، حيث يتكون كل شئ تقريبًا من الحمم البركانية! إنها تأتي من براكين جافا، التي تطل على القرى أدناها.

أسماء البراكين هي سالاك ، جنتر، كاره، ملبر، لكن هناك تسعة وثلاثون آخرين، يمكنك العثور على أسمائهم على الإنترنت!

عندما ينفجرون (يثورون) هناك رماد ونار، والدخان يملأ الهواء، ويصعد أعلى وأعلى، ويتعين على سكان الجزيرة المغادرة، إلى مكان آمن حيث يمكنهم البقاء.

تختلط الحمم والرماد بتدفقات الطين، وهذا يكون التربة حيث ينمو الغذاء الجيد، وعندما يعود المزارعون إلى الأرض، يشكرون البراكين على يد المساعدة.

Lesson 6. Rainbow Bridge National Monument-Utah, USA

جسر قوس قزح هو واحد من أكبر الأقواس الطبيعية في العالم يبلغ عمره ٢٠٠ مليون سنة، كما أنه يقع على بحيرة باول في ولاية يوتا بالولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٨٨ مترًا وهو مصنوع من الحجر الرملي الأحمر والبني. تسبب نهر في تآكل حفرة في حجر رملي وشكل القوس على مدى سنوات عديدة وعديدة.

يعتبر جسر قوس قزح نصبًا تذكاريًا قوميًا منذ عام ١٩١٠. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارته، فعليك ركوب قارب أو ركوب حصان أو المشي إليه. إنه في صحراء شديدة الحرارة، لذا يجب أن تزورها في الربيع أو في الخريف. لا تنس أن تأخذ زجاجة المياه الخاصة بك وقبعة الشمس!

Lesson 6. The pinnacles

تعتبر القمم الجبلية واحدة من أكثر التكوينات الجيولوجية الاستثنائية في غرب استراليا. انها مجموع من الصخور البيضاء الطويلة في حديقة نامبونج الوطنية (القومية). عمر القمم الجبلية



Unit 3

Lesson 1. Salma's Journey to Marsa Alam

رحلة سلمى إلى مرسى علم

إنه فصل الصيف وتذهب سلمى وعائلتها إلى مرسى علم لقضاء عطلة. سلمى تنظر من نافذة السيارة وترى لافتة عن منجم السكري للذهب.

هي تسأل : "ما هو المنجم يا أمي؟"

"إنه مكان نحصل منه على المواد الخام من الأرض، مثل الذهب والفحم".

تسأل سلمى : "هل المواد الخام مثل الموارد الطبيعية؟"

تقول أمي: "نعم، عادة"، "الموارد الطبيعية هي أشياء يمكننا استخدامها من الطبيعة، مثل الخشب والتربة. نستخدمها في صنع الأشياء التي نحتاجها. على سبيل المثال، نستخدم الخشب لصنع الطاولات، والحجر لبناء المنازل، والنباتات من أجل الغذاء. الشمس مورد طبيعي لأنها تمنحنا الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء".

"معلمنا يقول أن الفحم غير متجدد، هل هذا صحيح؟"

"نعم"، تقول أمي: "بعض الموارد الطبيعية مثل الطاقة الشمسية تكون متجددة - وهذا يعني أنه يمكننا الحصول على المزيد من الموارد بشكل طبيعي بعد استخدامها. ولكن بعض الموارد الطبيعية غير قابلة للتجديد. عندما نحرق الوقود الحفري مثل الفحم والغاز، لا يمكننا استخدامها مرة أخرى".

تسأل سلمى : "ما الفرق بين الفحم والغاز؟"

تقول أمي "الفحم مادة صلبة". "يمكنك التقاط جسم صلب، مثل حقيبتك. إن لها شكل ثابت. لا يمكنك عادةً رؤية الغازات، على الرغم من أن بعضها له لون شاحب. الغازات تتحرك وتغير شكلها".

"ماذا عن السوائل يا أمي؟"

"السوائل ليس لها شكل ثابت، لا يمكنك التقاط سائل غير موجود في وعاء. يمكن للسوائل أن تتدفق - على سبيل المثال، يمكنك صب الماء في كوب."

يقول أبي: "هل تعلموا أن بعض المواد الصلبة والسوائل والغازات يمكن أن تتغير من حالة إلى أخرى؟" "إذا قمت بغلي الماء السائل، فإنه يتحول إلى بخار الذي يكون غاز. إذا قمت بتجميد الماء السائل، فإنه يتحول إلى ثلج صلب. وعندما يذوب الثلج، يتحول إلى سائل مرة أخرى!"

تقول سلمى: "نعم، لقد تعلمنا ذلك في المدرسة!".

"لكنني أفهمها بشكل أفضل الآن. شكرًا يا أمي ويا أبي!"

Lesson 3. Resources in Ancient Egypt

مرحبًا، اسمي السيد طه وأنا أعمل في متحف. أنا أعلم أن فصلكم يتعلم عن الموارد الطبيعية، لذلك أنا هنا اليوم للحديث عن الموارد في مصر القديمة !

من ٢٥،٠٠٠ إلى ٣٠،٠٠٠ سنة، أنها مصنوعة من الحجر الجيري الأبيض الذي تأكل من المطر والرياح وتحول إلى أشكال مختلفة. اطول الأعمدة تبلغ بين ثلاثة وخمسة أمتار. لو أردت أن تزور القمم الجبلية فإن أفضل وقت هو الصباح الباكر أو متأخرا بعد الظهيرة. في هذا الوقت الشمس تجعلهم باللون برتقالي في مقابل اللون الأصفر للكثبان الرملية في الصحراء وأفضل وقت لرؤيتهم ما بين شهر أغسطس وشهر أكتوبر عندما تكون الصحراء ممتلئة بالزهور البرية الجميلة! ويمكنك القيادة إلى هناك من مدينة بيرث في غضون ساعتين.

Lesson 7. A Balloon Ride

قالت أمي : "ادخلي يا مريم. الوقت متأخر".

كانت مريم في الحديقة. كانت تحب مشاهدة الطيور. فكرت في الأماكن التي زاروها والأشياء التي رأوها.

قالت : "أود أن أطير". ضحكت أمي. "مثل الطائر؟" "أنت مرحة!"

عاد والد مريم إلى المنزل. كان سعيد. "أنظروا! لدي تذاكر لمهرجان الأقصر لمنطاد الهواء الساخن! سنرى بالونات بألوان كثيرة".

كانت مريم متحمسة للغاية. فكرت طوال الأسبوع في المهرجان. أخيرًا، جاء اليوم. كانت مريم تراقب كل شئ عندما رأت رجلًا طويل القامة. كان لديه معطف خاص وقبعة على رأسه. كان طيار منطاد الهواء الساخن! وبينما كان يمشي بعيدًا، سقط كتاب من حقيبته. لم يكن يعلم. ركضت مريم لتلتقطه.

"انظري يا أمي!" قالت. "إنه كتاب عن رحلات منطاد الهواء الساخن."

"أوه لا!" قالت أمي. "إنها مذكراته! إنها تدور حول كل مكان كان فيه زاره."

"يجب أن نعيدها!" قالت مريم. ركضوا معًا حتى وجدوا الرجل.

قال والد مريم. "مرحبًا! هل أسقطت هذا الكتاب؟"

"شكرًا لك!" قال الرجل. " هذا الكتاب مهم. أكتب عن كل مكان سافرت إليه في البالون! أريد أن أشكرك.

هل ترغب في جولة؟" وأشار إلى منطاد جميل.

قالوا. نعم من فضلك!" وقال "إنه طقس مثالي اليوم، بدون مطر والرياح لطيفة."

تبعوه إلى البالون وصعدوا إلى السلة. راقبت مريم وهو يشعل الشعلة. عندما أصبح الهواء داخل البالون ساخنًا، أسقط الحبل وصعد البالون ببطء في الهواء.

وسرعان ما طاروا فوق مدينة الأقصر الجميلة. حركتهم عليهم الرياح بلطف عبر السماء الزرقاء الصافية. رأوا حقول خضراء وصحاري رملية وأشجار النخيل وكثبان وجبال. لقد حلقوا فوق التماثيل الضخمة والمعابد الجميلة. يبدو النيل كشريط فضي. كان كل شئ هادئًا، وكانت المنازل والسيارات والقوارب صغيرة. أشرقت الشمس وشعرت وكأنهم يمكنهم أن يلمسوا الغيوم.

قالت مريم. "الآن أعرف كيف يكون الحال عندما تكون طائرًا!"

هل تعلمون أن مصر القديمة كانت ناجحة للغاية لأنها كانت تمتلك موارد طبيعية جيدة؟ كانت الزراعة جزءًا مهمًا جدًا من اقتصاد مصر القديمة. كان يفيض النيل كل عام ويجعل التربة خصبة. زرع المزارعون الكثير من المحاصيل المختلفة، مثل القطن والأرز.
هل يعرف أى منكم ما هو نبات الكتان؟ هذا النبات طويل القامة له زهور زرقاء. يتحول لون النبات إلى اللون الأصفر بعد موت الأزهار. كان الكتان مهمًا فى مصر القديمة. استخدمه الناس فى صناعة خيوط الكتان للملابس، وكذلك لصنع حبل قوى.
كان الملح أيضًا مصدرًا مهمًا جدًا فى مصر القديمة، وقد باعوه إلى دول أخرى أيضًا. استخدم الناس الملح للحفاظ على الطعام طازجًا. كان مفيدًا أيضًا فى الطب والزراعة. كانت بعض البحيرات فى دلتا النيل تحتوى على الكثير من الملح الذى يمكن للناس استخدامه أو بيعه.
غالبًا ما تُظهر صور الحياة فى مصر القديمة مجوهرات وأشياء جميلة مصنوعة من الذهب! نعتقد أنهم اكتشفوا الذهب منذ حوالى ٥٠٠٠ عام. فى البداية، وجدوه فى الأنهار، ثم صنعوا مناجمًا لاستخراج المزيد من الأرض. اكتشف علماء الآثار بعض مناجم الذهب القديمة فى الصحراء الشرقية.
كان النحاس معدنًا آخر مهمًا جدًا. كان من السهل ثنيه، واستخدمه الناس فى صنع الأدوات وأوانى الطبخ والسكاكين وكذلك المجوهرات. يمكننا أن نرى الكثير من هذه القطع اليوم فى المتاحف المصرية.
أخيرًا، كانت الحجارة والصخور موردًا طبيعيًا مفيدًا فى مصر القديمة أيضًا. نظرًا لوجود الكثير من الصخور مثل الحجر الجيرى، كان بإمكان المصريين القدماء بناء الأهرامات والعديد من المبانى والمعابد الكبيرة والمهمة. نقلت القوارب عبر نهر النيل بعض الأحجار عبر مصر إلى المدن المهمة.
لقد قام الناس بتربية النحل لصنع العسل فى مصر القديمة منذ أكثر من ٤٥٠٠ عام. كان العسل باهظ الثمن ولكنه مصدر طبيعى هام. لقد أحب الجميع ذلك لأنه كان بإمكانك استخدامه فى العديد من الأشياء المختلفة. استخدمه الناس لجعل طعم الطعام حلو المذاق. استخدموه كدواء أيضًا. إذا جرحت نفسك، يكمنك وضع العسل على الجرح. قام الناس ببناء منازل طويلة مستديرة من الطين للنحل. ثم وضعوا بيوت نحل طينية، تسمى خلايا، فوق بعضها البعض على شكل هرم. كل بضعة أشهر، كانوا ينقلون خلايا النحل فى قوارب فى نهر النيل حتى يتمكن النحل من إيجاد زهور جديدة.

Lesson 4. Mona's amazing cousin

منى متحمسة لأن ابنة عمها هبة وصلت لتوها من الإسكندرية. هبة كفيفة، مما يعنى أنها لا تستطيع الرؤية. "مرحبًا هبة. تعالى!"
تقول منى: "مرحبًا بك فى منزلى. هذه هى غرفة المعيشة".
هبة تتجول فى الغرفة وتشعر ببعض الأشياء.
تقول : "إنها غرفة جميلة". "كيف علمت بذلك؟" تسأل منى.
"حسنًا، عندما تمرر أصابعك على شىء ما، يمكنك أن تشعر بملمسه. لذا، أعلم أن لديك كراسى ناعمة ومريحة. وأنا أحب طاولتك الخشبية القديمة".
"كيف عرفتى أنها قديمة وخشبية؟"
"الخشب القديم خشن وله رائحة أيضًا".
هذا يعنى أنه يمكننى شم رائحة الخشب.
هبة تلتقط كرة بينج بونج. "وأنا أعلم أن هذه كرة وليست حجرًا بسبب كتلتها. إنها خفيفة، لكن الحجر ثقيل، تقول منى: "أنت رائعة يا هبة! أحب أن أتعلم المزيد".
"يمكننا أن نلعب لعبة. أولاً، سأطلب من العمة ليلى إحضار بعض الأشياء من المطبخ. يجب ألا تنظرين! ثم تغمضين عينيك. هل يمكنك إخبارى ما هى هذه الأشياء؟"
"هذا يبدو ممتعًا!" تقول والدة منى: إنها تضع بعض الأشياء على الطاولة.
منى تغمض عينيها. أولاً، تلتقط موزة طرية.
"ليست صلبه"، تقول منى: "يمكننى ثنيها، ولها رائحة. هل هى موزة؟"
تقول هبة :"نعم" "الآن ألمسى هذا بعناية". تسأل منى. "أوه، إنه لين وملمسه ناعم، وهو لزج. هل هو عسل؟"
"هذا صحيح! أنت جيدة فى هذه اللعبة يا منى!" "شكرا هبة. أعلم أننى سأتعلم منك الكثير أثناء وجودك هنا!"
تقول هبة : "أنا متأكدة أننى سأتعلم الكثير منك أيضًا!"

Lesson 5. A science experiment

"اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية!" قالت المعلمة هند: "ماذا يحدث عندما نصب سوائل مختلفة فى وعاء واحد؟" قال أمير: "أعتقد أنها تختلط معًا".
"هيا نكتشف!" قالت المعلمة هند.
كان لدى السيدة هند بعض البرطمانات الصغيرة تحتوى على هذه السوائل: العسل والحليب والماء وشراب القيقب والزيت النباتى ومنظف الأطباق. كان لديها أيضًا بعض البرطمانات الزجاجية الطويلة وحقنة بلاستيكية. أعطتها لمجموعات من الأطفال. ثم أوضحت لهم ما يجب عليهم فعله.
"أولاً، اسكبوا العسل ببطء، ولا تدعوه يلمس جانب البرطمان..
"سكب أمير وطارق العسل فيها. كان لزجًا وسميكًا". بعد ذلك، اسكب شراب القيقب ببطء.
لاحظ أمير وطارق أن شراب القيقب لم يكن بسمك العسل، فعندما سكبوه، صنع الشراب طبقة فوق العسل.
"انظرا!" قال طارق: "لم يختلط بالعسل. إنها فى الأعلى". "استخدم الحقنة لوضع الحليب ببطء فوق طبقة الشراب فى الوسط. ثم افعل الشىء نفسه مع منظف الصحون"، قالت المعلمة هند.
أضاف أمير وطارق الحليب. صنعت طبقة بيضاء فوق الشراب. ثم أضافوا منظف الأطباق. ثم استخدموا الحقنة لجعل الماء والزيت النباتى يتدفقان على جانب البرطمان. استمر أمير وطارق فى إضافة

السوائل ببطء شديد. في النهاية، كان البرطمان الخاص بي يحتوي على ست طبقات منفصلة.
"أحسنتم!" قالت المعلمة هند: "لماذا تعتقدوا ذلك يحدث؟" - سأل أمير. "هل بسبب وجود كميات مختلفة من السوائل؟"
"لا، يا أمير. كان لدينا نفس الكمية، لكن السوائل جميعها لها كتلة مختلفة. السوائل الأثقل تغوص في القاع. السوائل ذات الكتلة الأقل تطفو فوقها!"
قال أمير: "يمكننا وضع الأجسام الصلبة في السوائل. أنني أتساءل ماذا سوف يحدث." قال طارق. "يمكننا وضع العملة أولاً." قال أمير. "انظر العملة تغوص في القاع. إنها تمر عبر جميع السوائل".
قال طارق. "هذه كرة بينج بونج. هذه خفيفة جدًا." قال أمير. لا تنزل إلى العسل لكنها تطفو فوق سطح الماء."

Lesson 6. Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

تقرير وائل مهدي

في الأسبوع الماضي، ذهب فصلنا في رحلة إلى شلالات المياه في وادي الريان. كانت جميلة! توجد بحيرتان هناك: واحدة في الجزء العلوي من الشلالات وواحدة في الأسفل. يبلغ ارتفاع الشلالات ٦٧ مترًا، لذا فإن صوت سقوط المياه مرتفع جدًا. لم نتمكن من سماع معلمنا وهو يتحدث جيدًا!
علمنا أن الماء يأتي من واحة في الصحراء. الواحة مكان في الصحراء به ماء، ينتقل الماء ثمانية كيلومترات من الواحة إلى البحيرة عبر نفق.
أخبرنا معلمنا أيضًا أن هناك الكثير من الطيور المختلفة التي تعيش هناك. رأينا بعض الطيور وكان المفضل لدي طائر الفلامنجو.
ثم حان الوقت لبعض المرح! قفزنا إلى البحيرة السفلية وذهبنا للسباحة. من الآمن أن تسبح هناك، وقد ساعدنا ذلك على الاسترخاء بعد يوم طويل.

Lesson 6. Damietta

تقرير جميلة حسن

دمياط هي مدينة تقع على ساحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط في مصر. لديها ساحل طويل وجميل ويحب الكثير من الناس الذهاب إلى هناك في إجازة. جزيرة رأس البر هي واحدة من أكثر الأماكن المشهورة للإقامة فيها. هناك أيضًا العديد من الحدائق والبساتين الجميلة التي يمكن رؤيتها. البساتين هي الأماكن التي تزرع فيها أشجار الفاكهة. دمياط بها أيضًا ميناء مزدحم ومركز مهم للصيد. لديها أكبر عدد من قوارب الصيد في مصر. إنه مكان مهم للزراعة أيضًا. الزراعة هي ممارسة الزراعة. تزرع المحاصيل مثل الأرز والفواكه والقطن وأشجار النخيل. هنا للشعب المصري وأيضًا لبيعها إلى دول أخرى. دمياط مدينة مزدحمة لها تاريخ مشهور ولكنها أيضًا مدينة جميلة وحديثة. أود حقًا زيارة دمياط يومًا ما.

Lesson 7.

قالت الاستاذة هند : "حسنًا، أيها الطلاب". اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية. يمكنكم العمل في مجموعات من ثلاثة أشخاص. هناك جسم صلب في صندوق واحد، ووعاء به سائل في صندوق آخر. عليكم دراستها والإجابة على بعض الأسئلة".
كانت لارا جالسة بمفردها ولكن ريم ودينا كانوا جالسين أمامها. استدارت ريم وتحدثت إلى لارا. "لارا، قالت الاستاذة هند أنه يمكننا العمل في مجموعات من ثلاثة أفراد. هل ترغبين في العمل معنا؟"
قالت لارا بسعادة: "أوه، نعم من فضلك". جلست الفتيات معًا وأخرجن أقلامهن ودفاترهن. قالت دينا: "حسنًا، ماذا علينا أن نفعل؟".
نظرت لارا في ملاحظاتها. "الاستاذة هند قالت إن هناك جسمًا صلبًا في صندوق واحد، ووعاء به سائل في صندوق آخر".
قالت ريم : "هذا صحيح". قالت: "أنه علينا دراستها والإجابة على بعض الأسئلة". قالت دينا. "رائع، لنبدأ !"



Lesson 4. Special shoes

كان ذلك في عام ٢١٢٢ وكان جد هادي وهدى يزورهما. كان الجد رائد فضاء عندما كان صغيرًا. عندما زارهم، كان يجلب دائمًا شيئًا مثيرًا للاهتمام.
قال هادي "مرحبًا يا جدي." سألت هدى : "هل لديك شئ لتريه لنا؟"
قال : "أنا أحضر لكم شيئًا دائمًا، أليس كذلك؟ أنظروا إلى هذه."
أطلع الأطفال على زوج من الأحذية. قال هادي : "إنها لا تشبه الأحذية العادية". أجاب الجد : "أنت على حق". "دعنا نخرج. سأريك ما يمكن أن تفعله الأحذية." تتبع هدى وهادي الجد خارج المنزل إلى التل. كانوا متحمسين جدًا. جلسوا وأخذ الجد ثلاثة أزواج من الأحذية من الحقيبة.
قال الجد : "الجاذبية عادة ما تسحب الأشياء إلى الأرض." "لكن هذه أحذية خاصة. عندما ترتديها، فإن الجاذبية لا تشدك إلى أسفل. لذا، أيها الأطفال إذا كان بامكانكم الطيران، فماذا ستفعلون؟"
قال هادي "كنت سأطير فوق الاستاد لمشاهدة فريقي المفضل لكرة القدم". قالت هدى : "كنت سأطير فوق البحر".
"قال الجد : "لنبدأ بجولة في مدينتنا." "ارتدوا هذه الأحذية. الآن أضرب قدمك اليسرى بقدمك اليمنى ثلاث مرات. واحد، أثنان ثلاثة ... جيد. أنظرا! تستطيع الطيران!"
طار الأطفال في الهواء. تمكنوا من التحرك يمينًا أو يسارًا عن طريق تحريك ذراعهم إلى هذا الجانب. إذا وضعوا اذرعهم فوق رأسهم سيطيرون إلى الأعلى ولو أنزلوا أيديهم إلى جانبهم، فإنهم يطيرون إلى أسفل مرة أخرى. أحب هدى وهادي الطيران. إنه كان شعور مدهش. كان بإمكانهم أن يروا المدينة من هناك.
بعد عشر دقائق، قال الجد، "حسنًا يا أطفال. الآن نحن بحاجة إلى النزول إلى الأرض مرة أخرى"

عندما كانوا على الأرض، سألت هدى : "لماذا لا يرتدى الجميع أحذية كهذه؟" قال الجد : "لأنهم فقط لرواد الفضاء!" "والأشخاص المميزون أيضًا، مثل أحفادى المفضلين!"

Lesson 5. Jobs in science

١. أنا أمل. أريد أن أصبح رائدة فضاء لأنى مهتمة بالنجوم والكواكب. من المهم دراسة الكواكب الأخرى لأنها تساعدنا على فهم كوكبنا، وهذا قد يساعدنا فى حل بعض مشاكل الأرض. عندما نشاهد مقاطع فيديو لمحطة الفضاء الدولية، يبدو أن العيش بدون جاذبية ممتعًا - يطفوا الناس طوال الوقت! لقد قرأت الكثير عن كوكب المريخ والأبحاث التى يقوم بها العلماء. ربما يمكننى زيارة كوكب المريخ يومًا ما!

٢. أسمى جنى. عندما أكبر، أحب أن أكون مهندسة مثل عمى وائل. تبدو وظيفته مثيرة للأهتمام حقًا. هل تعلم أن الأشخاص الذين يقومون بهذه المهمة لا يساعدون فقط فى بناء الطرق والجسور؟ كما أنهم يساعدون فى صنع أشياء مثل ألواح التزلج! يقول العم وائل أنك بحاجة إلى فهم العلوم للقيام بهذه المهمة. على سبيل المثال، تحتاج إلى معرفة كيفية تأثير الأحتكاك والقوى المختلفة على كيفية تحرك الواح التزلج.

٣. أنا كريم. قررت أننى أريد أن أصبح طيارًا عندما ذهبت إلى مهرجان طيران مع أمى وأبى. رأينا الكثير من الطائرات المختلفة تحلق فى السماء، وقام بعضها بحركات مذهلة، وحلقت بالقرب من الأرض، ثم حلقت فى دائرة. حلقت الطائرات فى مجموعات، وأحيانًا كانت أجنحتها قريبة جدًا من بعضها. بدت رائعة. كان هناك أيضًا متحف صغير، وتعلمت كيف تساعد مقاومة الهواء الطائرات على البقاء فى الهواء!

Lesson 6. Writing an email

مرحبًا آسر،

هل تستمتع بعطلة الأسبوع عند أجدادك؟

لقد سألتنى عن الوظيفة التى أريد القيام بها فى المستقبل وقررت الآن. أريد أن أكون عالمًا وادرس عن الفضاء. أنا مهتم حقًا بالفضاء وأريد أن أفهمه بشكل أفضل. لا يزال هناك الكثير مما لا نعرفه.

لقد تحدثت مع والداى حول ما يجب أن أفعله. هذا ما قالوه : أولًا، أحتاج إلى القيام بعمل جيد فى المدرسة، خاصة فى مجال العلوم. بعد ذلك، أحتاج إلى الذهاب إلى الجامعة ودراسة مواد مثل الكيمياء والرياضيات والفيزياء. هل تعرف ما هى الفيزياء؟ كل شئ عن الطاقة، الفضاء والزمان، لذلك فهى مفيدة إذا كنت ترغب فى دراسة النجوم والكواكب. أخيرًا، أحتاج إلى العثور على وظيفة فى مكان يدرس فيه الناس عن الفضاء، مثل الجامعة. ثم يمكننى العمل فى مشاريع والتعلم من علماء آخرين. ماذا تعتقد؟ هل تعرف ما هى الوظيفة التى تريد القيام بها فى المستقبل ؟

وداعًا الآن !

ماجد

Lesson 7. The first man to fly

كان على يبلغ من العمر عشر سنوات وعاش فى القرن التاسع. وكان يعمل فى مزرعة والده. كل يوم فى ذلك الصيف، كان يرى رجلًا يسير عبر الحقول باتجاه برج. كان الرجل عجوزًا لكنه يبدو قويًا. ذات يوم، قرر على التحدث إلى الرجل.

سأل على "معذرة، إلى أين أنت ذاهب؟" أجاب الرجل : أنا أعمل فى البرج القديم."

سأل على "هل أنت عامل البناء ؟" ضحك الرجل. "لا، أنا مخترع. أبلغ من العمر ٦٥ عامًا ولكنى لا أريد التوقف عن العمل. هناك دائمًا أشياء جديدة لاكتشافها!" سأل على. "ماذا تعمل الآن؟" قال الرجل "أحاول أن أكتشف كيف أطير كالطيور" ثم أبتعد.

فى اليوم التالى، قرر على أن يتتبع الرجل. كان يحمل شيئًا. سأل على "ماذا تحمل؟" وقال: هذه أجنحتى. "أنها مصنوعة من الخشب والريش."

سأل على : "هل ستستخدمهم للطيران؟ " قال الرجل، "حسنًا، لماذا لا تأتى معى؟ ثم سنعرف : أليس كذلك ؟"

ساروا إلى البرج وصعدوا إلى القمة. شاهد على الرجل وهو يرتدى جناحيه. قال الرجل "حسنًا، ها أنا ذا!" وقفز من البرج! أندهش على لأن الرجل طار ببطء إلى الأرض! لم يراه يهبط.

ركض على إلى أسفل البرج وسرعان ما وجد الرجل. كان يجلس على الأرض. بدا غير سعيد.

قال على : "هل أنت بخير؟" هو قال "لا! هذا مؤلم!"

قال على "لكنك طرت! رأيتك!" قال الرجل "طرت لكنى لم أهبط بشكل صحيح." "أحتاج إلى دراسة الطيور بشكل أفضل لمعرفة كيفية هبوطها دون الإضرار بأنفسهم." أكتشف على فيما بعد أن الرجل كان أسمه عباس بن فرناس. لقد كان شخصًا مهمًا أخترع أشياء كثيرة، بما فى ذلك الساعات المائية. لكن على لم يكن يعلم أن فى المستقبل، أصبح عباس بن فرناس مشهورًا جدًا لأنه ربما كان أول شخص على الإطلاق يطير باستخدام الأجنحة.



CONNECT Plus

بالداخل
كراسة المعاصر
للواجب المنزلى

الصف الخامس الابتدائى
للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات
الفصل الدراسى الأول

5th Primary 2024
FIRST TERM

Contents

1

El Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

2

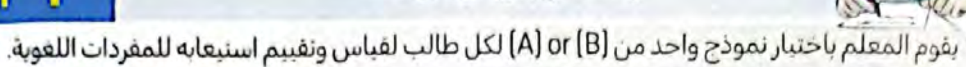
A week is enough مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط





Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

غابة	1. Mangrove .... are so important.
جذور	2. The .... of mangrove trees help them get oxygen.
احتباس حراري	3. Mangrove trees help us with ....
بركة مياه	4. An ecosystem can be as small as a ....
كائنات غير حية	5. Plants and animals all .... with each other.
يتفاعل	

Lessons 2 & 3

غابة مطيرة	1. The Amazon .... is an important ecosystem.
يقطع	2. When people .... down trees, animals will lose their homes.
مصور فوتوغرافي	3. He takes nice photos. He is a ....
حياة برية	4. There are many animals in the ....
يدعو	5. He .... me to his birthday party.
طائر طنان النحل	6. My favorite bird is ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

ينمو	1. Mangrove trees can .... in the sea.
آمن	2. The forests are a .... home for many animals.
النظام البيئي	3. An .... is all the animals and plants in an area.
مياه مالحة	4. Most trees can't grow in .... water.
كائنات حية	5. Mangrove trees help young fish ....
البقاء على قيد الحياة	

Lessons 2 & 3

فاكهة القشطة الهندية	1. A .... is a delicious fruit.
البذور	2. Animals take .... to other parts .
صبور	3. He isn't .... He always gets angry.
مشهور	4. Mohamed Salah is very ....
محظوظ	5. They weren't ...., they missed the train.
معرض / عرض	6. Her .... was a great success.

Model A

Write the meaning ⟶ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
مندهش	....	1. I was .... when I opened the present.
ديدان	....	2. The trees protected the ....
أخبار	....	3. I have bad ....
الأوردة	....	4. .... move blood away from our heart.
القلب	....	5. Our .... beats about 70 times a minute.
البشر	....	6. .... are similar to plants.

Lessons 6 & 7

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
حمام السباحة	....	1. We swim in the ....
غريب	....	2. A cub had a .... feeling in his stomach.
مطر	....	3. Without .... , the grass can't grow.
أرانب	....	4. The .... don't have any food.
دافئ	....	5. The weather is very ....
على حق	....	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning ⟶ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
يأكل	....	1. They made a ....
خطأ	....	2. Bees carry .... from one plant to another.
حبوب اللقاح	....	3. .... carry blood to the heart.
الشرايين	....	4. A woman's heart .... faster than a man's heart .
ينبض	....	5. Humans don't use .... like plants do.
غازثاني أكسيد الكربون	....	

Lessons 6 & 7

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
فاكهة الرمان	....	1. There is a .... tree in the garden.
مادة الرياضيات	....	2. He loves ....
الأشبال (صغار الأسد)	....	3. .... eat meat, not grass.
ميت	....	4. Some rabbits might be ....
يستلقي	....	5. The cub .... in the sunshine.
جوعان / جائع	....	6. They feel ....

II Important 15 words

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

1. lizard

2. wildlife

3. worm
4. heart
5. kingfisher

6. rainforest
7. marine
8. veins

9. arteries
10. dugong
11. desert
12. photographer
13. seeds
14. blood
15. grassland



grassland





























III Writing Practice

• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى قم بترتيب الكلمات	Step 3 Paragraphs اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
An ecosystem	▸ Write the meaning : نظام بيئي .... بركة مياه .... كائنات غير حية .... يتفاعل .... غابة	▸ Reorder the words : 1. all - the animals - An ecosystem - in an area - is. .... 2. can - as - small - The ecosystem - be - as a pond. .... 3. animals - with - Plants - interact - and - non-living things. .... 4. can be - as - The ecosystem - big - as a forest.	▸ Write a paragraph about : An ecosystem ....
Mangrove trees	بيئة .... مياه مالحة .... سميك .... يحمي .... كائنات حية	5. trees - the - Mangrove - help - environment. .... 6. can - salt water - Mangrove - grow-trees - in. .... 7. mangrove - are - The leaves - trees - of - thick. .... 8. protect - things - Mangrove - trees - living.	Mangrove trees ....
How to keep your heart healthy	صحي .... يسترخي .... صالة ألعاب .... يأكل .... يتدرب	9. healthy - Eat - food. .... 10. time - to - Take - relax - some. .... 11. regularly - the gym - Exercise - in.	How to keep your heart healthy ....



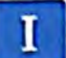
PART 1

UNIT 2

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 1 & 2

Write the meaning	
كثبان رملية	....
قارة	....
فوهة بركان	....
يثور	....
الصحراء الكبرى	....
عجائب	....

1. .... is a hill made of sand.
2. The African .... is an amazing place.
3. Ngorongoro Crater is the largest volcanic .... in the world.
4. Scientists think that Mount Kilimanjaro hasn't .... for 360,000 years.
5. The .... is the largest hot desert.
6. It has some of the most famous natural ....

Lesson 3

Write the meaning	
طبيعى	....
لا يصدق / مذهل	....
رسومات	....
عالم آثار	....
زوار	....
كوبرى	....

1. The .... world in Africa is beautiful.
2. People have made many .... things.
3. There are .... in rocks.
4. .... think that the Sahara wasn't as dry in the past.
5. .... to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest adventure.
6. The .... was built in 2010.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 1 & 2

Write the meaning	
أرض رطبة	....
شلالات	....
براكين	....
جبل	....
تغطى	....
وادى	....

1. .... is an area that is covered by water.
2. Victoria Falls is an enormous ....
3. There are beautiful .... in Africa.
4. The .... is very big.
5. The Sahara Desert .... eleven countries.
6. A .... is a low area of land between two mountains.

Lesson 3

Write the meaning	
من صنع الإنسان	....
أعمدة	....
اللغة	....
مغامرة	....
جاف	....
حطام / بقايا	....

1. Some of .... wonders are in Egypt.
2. The temple was built upon four ....
3. The Afrikaans .... has words from lots of different countries.
4. People can go on .... in the desert.
5. The desert is very ....

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

Word	Meaning
أعاصير	....
الرياح	....
مطاردى العواصف	....
حمم بركانية	....
جزيرة	....
بنور	....

1. They went to the USA to study.................
2. The.................was very strong.
3. ....are people who travel to places where there is extreme weather.
4. ....is hot liquid rock.
5. Java is an.................

Lessons 6 & 7

Word	Meaning
أقواس	....
حجر رملى	....
القمم	....
لهب	....
منطاد	....
طيار	....

1. Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural ....
2. A river eroded a hole in the.................and has formed the arch.
3. The.................are a group of tall white rocks.
4. ....is the burning gas that you see in a fire.
5. Hot air.................can fly in the sky.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

Word	Meaning
طقس قاس	....
فاز	....
تربة	....
نار / حريق	....
رماد	....
تدفق الطين	....

1. There are many causes of.................
2. He.................first prize for child photographers.
3. ....is the top part of the Earth in which plants grow.
4. When volcanoes erupt,.................and rocks come out of the top.
5. A.................is soft, wet material that moves down mountains.

Lessons 6 & 7

Word	Meaning
الحجر الجيرى	....
جيولوجى	....
شريطة	....
سلة	....
تماثيل	....
جولة - نزهة	....

1. The Pinnacles are made of.................
2. The Pinnacles are.................formations.
3. ....is a long, soft piece of material.
4. People use a.................to carry things.
5. There are many.................in the museum.
6. Would you like to have a.................?

II Important 15 words

◂ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.





dunes





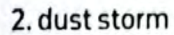











1. dunes
2. dust storm

3. flame

4. volcano
5. paintings
6. air balloon
7. pilot
8. rope
9. waterfalls
10. island
11. statues
12. valley
13. rainbow
14. thunderstorm
15. flood

III Writing Practice

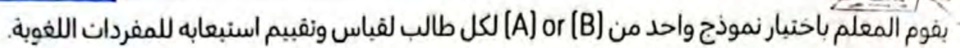
• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من اتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوه الأولى قم بترتيب الكلمات	Step 3 Paragraphs اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Natural wonders of Africa	▸ Write the meaning : ساحل .... الصحراء الكبرى .... بركان .... قارة .... مكان	▸ Reorder the words : 1. beautiful - There - coasts - are. .... 2. desert - the largest - The Sahara - Desert - is. .... 3. Kilimanjaro - Mount - made - of - is - volcanoes - three. .... 4. is - place - an - The African - amazing - continent.	▸ Write a paragraph about : Natural wonders of Africa ....
The volcanoes of Java	حمم بركانية .... تدفق الطين .... رماد .... جزيرة .... تربة	5. thirty-nine - There - volcanoes - are - on Java - Island. .... 6. ash - mud flows - with - The lava - mix - and. .... 7. is - island - Java - an. .... 8. is - growing - The soil - good for - in Java - plants.	The volcanoes of Java ....
Victoria Falls	يسقط .... شلالات مياه .... ضخم .... نهر .... ضوضاء	9. falls, - noise - When - it makes - the water. .... 10. an - waterfall - Victoria falls - enormous - is. .... 11. on - River - It's - the Zambezi.	Victoria Falls ....



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	الطبيعة	**1.** We get natural resources from ....
....	طاقة شمسية	**2.** The sun gives us ....
....	يذوب / ينصهر	**3.** When ice .... , it becomes a liquid.
....	صلب	**4.** Ice is a ....
....	تلتقط	**5.** You can't .... a liquid.
....	يتجمد	**6.** If you .... liquid water, it turns to ice.

Lessons 2 & 3

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	يحفر	**1.** He .... in the ground.
....	متحف	**2.** I'll go to the ....
....	نبات الكتان	**3.** .... is a tall plant.
....	الطب	**4.** Salt was useful in ....
....	ذهب	**5.** Ancient Egyptians found .... in rivers.
....	اقتصاد	**6.** Agriculture was an important part of the Egyptian ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	مصادر طبيعية	**1.** .... are raw materials.
....	كهرباء	**2.** Solar energy makes ....
....	متجددة	**3.** Solar energy is ....
....	ثابت	**4.** Liquids don't have a .... shape.
....	يغلي	**5.** If you .... liquid water, it turns into steam.
....	يتدفق	**6.** Liquids can ....

Lessons 2 & 3

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	ديناصور	**1.** We might find .... bones.
....	مجرفة	**2.** Let's take a .... to dig in the ground.
....	خيوط الكتان	**3.** People use flax to make .... for clothes.
....	ملح	**4.** .... was a very important resource.
....	معدن النحاس	**5.** .... was a very important metal.
....	يفيض	**6.** The Nile .... every year.

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

ملمس	1. .... is the feel of something.
كتلة	2. .... is how heavy something is.
صلب	3. A chair is ....
تجربة علمية	4. We're going to do an ....
حقنة	5. Use the .... to put your milk slowly.
يطفو	6. The ping pong ball .... on the top of the water.

Lessons 6 & 7

رحلة قصيرة	1. I will go on a .... to Luxor.
طائر الفلامنجو	2. My favorite bird was the ....
آلة حاسبة	3. A .... helps us study math.
نفق	4. The train goes through a ....
بحيرات	5. There are two ....
يسافر	6. He .... from Paris to Cairo.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

رائحة / عطر	1. .... is the smell of something.
ناعم / أملس	2. Honey is soft, ... and sticky.
سائل	3. Milk is a ....
زيت زيتون	4. We can pour .... onto food.
كفيف	5. He can't see. He is ....
خشن	6. The old wood is ....

Lessons 6 & 7

شلالات مياه	1. Our class went on a trip to the .... at Wadi El Rayan.
واحة	2. An .... is a place in the desert.
مركز رياضي	3. We can do many activities in the ....
تأتي من	4. The water .... an oasis.
اسئلة	5. You have to answer some ....
بنفسها	6. She does her homework ....

II Important 20 words

◄ كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

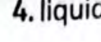








solid


























1. gold
2. skeleton
3. flamingo
4. liquid
5. dinosaur
6. syringe
7. container
8. waterfalls
9. shovel
10. papyrus
11. coal
12. stone
13. limestone
14. raw materials
15. copper
16. solid
17. flax
18. gazelle
19. hole
20. steam

III Writing Practice

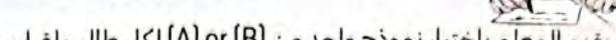
• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبقًا الخطوه الأولى قم بترتيب الكلمات	Step 3 Paragraphs اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Natural resources	▸ Write the meaning : غير متجددة .... مصادر طبيعية .... متجددة .... طاقة شمسية .... نحصل عليها	▸ Reorder the words : 1. resources - non-renewable - Some - are - natural. .... 2. natural - nature - We - from - get - resources. .... 3. a - resource - The sun - natural - is. .... 4. is - Solar - renewable - energy.	▸ Write a paragraph about : Natural resources ....
Flax	نبات الكتان .... خيوط الكتان .... نبات طويل .... ملابس .... زهرة	5. flax - for clothes - People - use - linen - to make. .... 6. is - plant - Flax - a tall. .... 7. has - flower - Flax - a blue.	Flax ....
Physical properties	ملمس .... رائحة / عطر .... كتلة .... العسل .... لزج	8. the feel - Texture - something - is - of. .... 9. the smell - something - Odor - of - is. .... 10. is - heavy - is - Mass - how - something. .... 11. is - Honey - sticky.	Physical properties ....



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning ➤ **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

قوة	....
عجلة	....
يقود دراجة	....
دواسة	....
تسقط	....
تل	....

1. Riding a bike is all about the ....
2. Using the brakes slows down or stops the ....
3. I'll get my bike to .... together.
4. You can use force to get the bike to move by pushing the ....
5. When you cycle too slowly, the bike will ....
6. You need to cycle harder when you go up a ....

Lessons 2 & 3

الضغط (الشد)	....
جاذبية	....
النظام الشمسي	....
قطعة	....
حافة / طرف	....
حبل	....

1. .... is a pull force.
2. There are eight planets in our ....
3. Take a .... of paper and fold it in half vertically.
4. Fold over the .... from point to point.
5. He uses the .... to climb the mountain.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning ➤ **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

مكابح / فرامل	....
عجلات	....
ركوب الدراجات	....
يزيد	....
قوة سحب	....
يدفع	....

1. You use force to stop the bike, by using the ....
2. The bike has two ....
3. I'm good at ....
4. If you want to .... your speed, push the pedals more quickly.
5. He .... the door to get in.

Lessons 2 & 3

مقاومة الهواء	....
الطيران	....
يطوي	....
سهم	....
خطاف	....
إطارات	....

1. There's a special force called air ....
2. Gravity keeps people from .... up into space.
3. .... the paper in half.
4. Your .... is ready to fly.
5. A .... is made of metal.
6. The car has four ....

Model A

Write the meaning ⟶ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

Meaning	Word	Complete the sentences
....	رائد فضاء	1. Grandpa was an ....
....	جولة	2. Let's start with a .... of our city.
....	طبيعى / عادى	3. .... means usual, not different.
....	مهندسين	4. .... help make things such as skateboards.
....	كوكب	5. Earth is a ....
....	رحلة	6. We visit many different places in the ....

Lessons 6 & 7

Meaning	Word	Complete the sentences
....	جامعة	1. I go to ....
....	مستقبل	2. What job do you want to do in the .... ?
....	قوى	3. The man was old but looked ....
....	يهبط	4. .... means move down until something is on the ground.
....	وقت فراغ	5. I play video games in my ....
....	نصيحة	6. Her .... helps me to be better.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning ⟶ **Complete the sentences**

Lessons 4 & 5

Meaning	Word	Complete the sentences
....	ستاد	1. I would fly over the ....
....	مميز / خاص	2. .... means that you're different from others.
....	فضاء	3. An astronaut is somebody who travels into ....
....	طيار	4. Karim wants to be a ....
....	كبارى	5. Engineers help to build roads and ....
....	مهرجان / احتفال	6. I went to an airplane ....

Lessons 6 & 7

Meaning	Word	Complete the sentences
....	مادة الكيمياء	1. I study subjects like .... and math.
....	خاصة	2. I need to do well at school, ... in science.
....	ريش	3. .... are soft things that cover a bird.
....	مخترع	4. An .... is a person who makes or designs new things.
....	عامل بناء	5. A .... is a person who builds houses.
....	مندهش	6. They were .... after seeing her red hair.

II Important 20 words

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

1. rope
2. paper airplane
3. skateboard
4. wheel
5. path
6. astronaut
7. hook
8. wing
9. feathers
10. brake
11. bike
12. tower
13. ~~tire~~
14. engineer
15. scientist
16. planets
17. pedal
18. spring
19. architect
20. pilot



tire







































III Writing Practice

• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التى تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Paragraphs اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Special shoes	▸ Write the meaning : مميز / خاص .... زوج من .... يرتدى .... يطير فوق .... ستاد	▸ Reorder the words : 1. the children - shoes - He - pair of - showed - a special. .... 2. put on - The children - the shoes. .... 3. was - astronaut - My grandpa - an. .... 4. flew - stadium - The child - over - the.	▸ Write a paragraph about : Special shoes ....
Jobs in science	مهندسين .... طرق .... رائد فضاء .... كواكب .... لوح تزلج	5. help - roads - Engineers - to build. .... 6. are - planets - Astronauts - interested - in. .... 7. are - flying - in - Pilots - interested. .... 8. help - things - Engineers - make - skateboards - such as.	Jobs in science ....
A job I want to do in the future	فى المستقبل .... خاصة .... يؤدى جيدًا .... مادة الكيمياء .... جامعة	9. want - a scientist - I - to be - in the future. .... 10. want to - ,especially - I - do well - in science - at school. .... 11. need - study - I - chemistry - to - in - university.	A job I want to do in the future ....

PART 2

Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمى على الإملاء



- المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

Unit 1

Model A

1. rainforest ....
2. grassland ....
3. hike ....
4. wildlife ....
5. worm ....
6. heart ....
7. butterflies ....
8. strange ....

١. صحراء ....
٢. سحلية ....
٣. كائنات غير حية ....
٤. تأثير ....
٥. قروى ....
٦. شرايين ....
٧. مركز رياضى ....
٨. جوع ....

Model B

1. marine ....
2. living things ....
3. snow ....
4. photographer ....
5. dugong ....
6. blood ....
7. bone ....
8. community ....

١. ماء عذب ....
٢. شبل (صغير الأسد) ....
٣. أمراض ....
٤. حبوب اللقاح ....
٥. منطقة طبيعية ....
٦. طائر طنان النحل ....
٧. أوردة ....
٨. يسترخى ....

Units 1 & 2

Model A

1. dunes ....
2. volcano ....
3. climate change ....
4. hurricane ....
5. lava ....
6. rainbow ....
7. species ....
8. erupt ....

١. قارة ....
٢. عجائب ....
٣. حطام / بقايا ....
٤. عاصفة رملية ....
٥. مطاردى العواصف ....
٦. حمم بركانية ....
٧. يتفاعل ....
٨. بدنى / جسدى ....

Model B

1. crater ....
2. the Nile ....
3. man-made ....
4. archaeologist ....
5. flood ....
6. mud flow ....
7. dead ....
8. pomegranate ....

١. شلال مياه ....
٢. مركز رياضى ....
٣. وادى ....
٤. نبات البردى ....
٥. عمود ....
٦. عاصفة رعدية ....
٧. لهب ....
٨. الجهاز الدورى ....

Units 1, 2 & 3

Model A

1. liquid ....
2. solid ....
3. economy ....
4. texture ....
5. syringe ....
6. exhibition ....
7. border ....
8. tropical ....

١. مواد خام ....
٢. طاقة شمسية ....
٣. مجرفة ....
٤. نبات الكتان ....
٥. لزج ....
٦. احتباس حرارى ....
٧. فتحة / ثقب ....
٨. قصيدة ....

Model B

1. steam ....
2. stone ....
3. limestone ....
4. rough ....
5. mass ....
6. wetland ....
7. canyon ....
8. century ....

١. حاوية ....
٢. فحم ....
٣. هيكل عظمى ....
٤. خيوط الكتان ....
٥. رائحة ....
٦. نفق ....
٧. ضوء الشمس ....
٨. دخان ....

Units 1, 2, 3 & 4

Model A

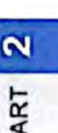
1. cycling ....
2. pull force ....
3. tires ....
4. dart ....
5. parachute ....
6. illnesses ....
7. coast ....
8. fixed ....

١. قوة ....
٢. زنبرك ....
٣. رائد فضاء ....
٤. كواكب ....
٥. لوح تزلج ....
٦. عناصر غذائية ....
٧. نار / حريق ....
٨. متجدد ....

Model B

1. pedal ....
2. hook ....
3. thick ....
4. architect ....
5. inventor ....
6. ribbon ....
7. decade ....
8. non-renewable ....

١. مكابح / فرامل ....
٢. مسار ....
٣. سرعة ....
٤. ينبض ....
٥. فضاء ....
٦. لطيف ....
٧. قوس ....
٨. معدن النحاس ....



PART 2

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط

اليوم الأول

Listening skill



عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الثانى

Reading Skill



- عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجات في الامتحان.
- عرض جديد للقصة المقررة يضمن لك الحصول على أعلى درجة فى الامتحان.

اليوم الثالث

Vocabulary & Language



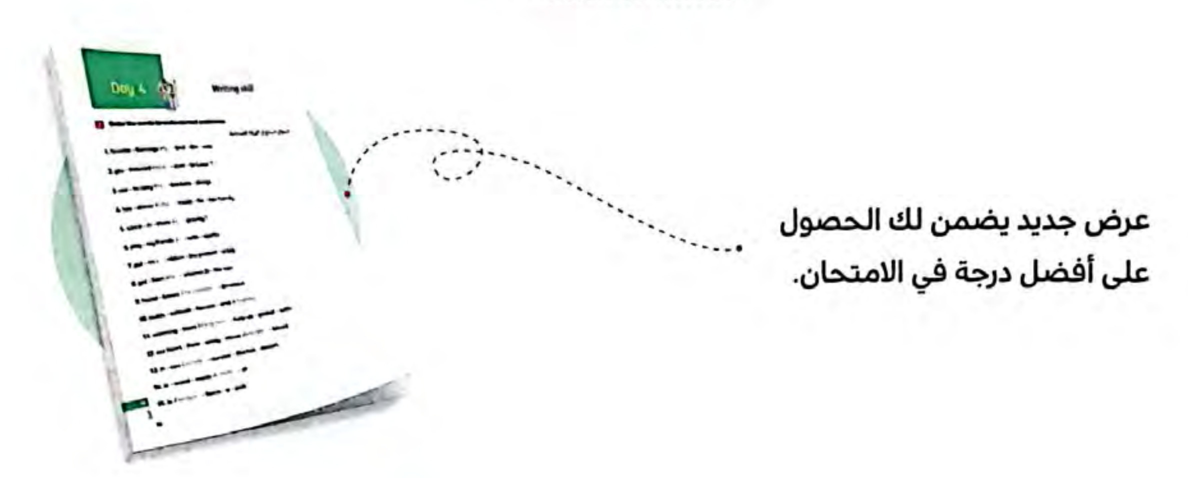
طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل كلمات المنهج.



عرض كل قواعد المنهج للمراجعة والتدرب عليها.

اليوم الرابع

Writing Skill

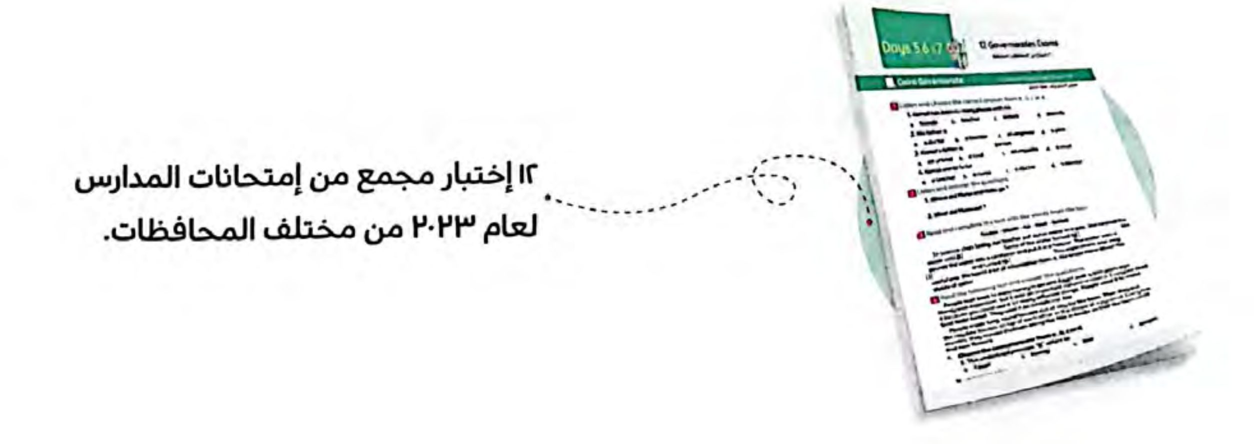


عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

Governorates Exams

اختبارات مجمعة من امتحانات المحافظات



١٢ إختبار مجمع من إمتحانات المدارس لعام ٢٠٢٣ من مختلف المحافظات.

Day 1

Listening skill

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن : أن يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع مكون من (٦٠) كلمة ويقوم الطالب بوضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة.

A

1. I wanted to fly like a ....
   a. plane b. car c. kite d. bird
2. My mom bought us .... for the balloon festival.
   a. tickets b. kites c. eagles d. birds
3. A hot air balloon .... lit the flames.
   a. fisherman b. teacher c. pilot d. officer
4. We were flying over the beautiful city of ....
   a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Luxor d. Aswan

B

1. Jana would love to be a/an ....
   a. vet b. teacher c. doctor d. engineer
2. An engineer's job sounds really ....
   a. boring b. interesting c. terrible d. awful
3. Engineers make things such as skateboards and ....
   a. roads b. windows c. tables d. chairs
4. You need to understand .... to be an engineer.
   a. science b. math c. geology d. social studies

2. Listen and answer the questions.

السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن : أن يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع مكون من (٦٠) كلمة ثم يقوم الطالب بإجابة الأسئلة المعطاة له.

A

1. What did people do when they came to the mangrove forest ?

....

2. What did the kingfisher and the lizard hear ?

....

B

1. What does Adham want to be ?

....

2. Where did Adham and his parents go ?

....

Day 2



Reading skill

3. Read and complete the text with words from the box.

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية عبارة : عن نص من حوالى ٧٠ إلى ٨٠ كلمة أو حوار من ٨ جمل والمطلوب أن يكمل الطالب ٤ فراغات من كلمات معطاه له.

A

paper – make – papyrus – sandals – medicine

Papyrus is a strong plant. People used papyrus to (1) .... things such as baskets and (2) .... The most important thing they made from it was (3) .... The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using (4) ....

B

dunes – dry – plans – eleven – snow

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers (1) .... countries. Some of the sand (2) .... can be 180 meters high. Although it is a hot and (3) .... place, some animals and (4) .... live here.

or: Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

أو : عبارة عن حوار به ٤ فراغات والمطلوب أن يكمل الطالب الفراغ من الكلمات المعطاه له.

A

shovel – dinosaur – digging – mountains – going

Grandpa : Good evening, children.
Dalia : Good evening, Grandpa.
Grandpa : Where are you (1) .... tomorrow, children?
Dalia : Nancy and I are going into the mountains with Dad.
Grandpa : When I was a boy, people told me that there were dinosaur bones in the mountains.
Dalia : Do you mean real (2) .... bones?
Grandpa : I think so. My friend was (3) .... a hole there and he found some bones.
Nancy : Wow! Dalia, let's take a (4) .... when we go to the mountains.

B

invented – working – bird – inventor – feathers

Ali : Hello, Ayman.
Ayman : Hello, Ali.
Ali : What do you want to be?

Ayman : I want to be a/an (1) ....

Ali : What are you (2) .... on now ?

Ayman : I'm trying to find out how to fly like a/an (3) ....

Ali : What are you carrying ?

Ayman : These are my wings. They're made of wood and (4) ....

4. Read the following text and answer the questions.

السؤال الرابع في الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن : قطعة فهم مكونة من ٨٠ إلى ١٠٠ كلمة متبوعة بسؤالين إختيار من متعدد وسؤالين بإستخدام أدوات الإستفهام.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an **expensive**, but it was an important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is the importance of ....

a. honey b. salt c. paper d. mud

2. The underlined adjective "**expensive**" means ....

a. high in price b. cheap c. little money d. low

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why was honey important ? Give two reasons.

....

4. Why did they move the hives along the Nile in boats ?

....

5. The Reader

السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية القصة المقررة عبارة عن : سؤالين حيث يقوم الطالب بوضع علامة (صح) أو (خطأ) وسؤالين يقوم الطالب بقراءة الجمل ويكملها.

A. Read and write T (True) of F (False).

1. The acacia tree gives gazelles food and water. ☐
2. Jubari was thirsty. ☐
3. Wadi El Gemal is in the Eastern Desert. ☐
4. Jubari followed his father for his first year. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences:

1. .... eat acacia tree seeds and take them to new places.
2. Subira told Jubari how to stay away from ....

B **A. Read and write T (True) of F (False).**

1. Jubari saw a Nubian ibex on the mountain. ☐
2. A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. ☐
3. Jubari wasn't brave. ☐
4. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences:

1. The desert is perfect for gazelles to ....
2. The beach was too ....

C **A. Read and write T (True) of F (False).**

1. Seagrass grows under the sea. ☐
2. Lake Nasser is a natural lake. ☐
3. The mountain was very steep. ☐
4. Gebel Elba is the home of the crocodile. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences:

1. Turtle's eggs are in the ....
2. The Nubian ibex lives in the ....

D **A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Jubari climbed the tallest mountain. ☐
2. Ras Hankorab beach isn't a good place for gazelles. ☐
3. Ras Hankorab beach is the home of Nubian ibex. ☐
4. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Gebel Elba is too .... for Jubari.
2. Jubari's mother advised him not to .... near animals with sharp teeth.

E **A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. The first animal Jubari met was a dugong. ☐
2. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ☐
3. Lake Nasser is an important resource of water. ☐
4. The desert is the perfect place for gazelles to run. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari didn't want to live in ....
2. .... trees need gazelles.



Vocabulary & Language

I Vocabulary

• Unit 1

mangrove forests	غابات المانغروف	neighbor	جار
national park	محمية طبيعية	wildlife photographer	مصور للحياة البرية
thick	سميك	goal	هدف
illnesses	أمراض	canopy	مظلة
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	exhibition	معرض - عرض
living things	الكائنات الحية	worm	دودة
non-living things	الكائنات غير الحية	pollen	حبوب اللقاح
community	مجتمع	worried	قلق
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	surprised	مندهش
hike	نزهة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام	arteries	الشرايين
villager	قروى [أحد سكان القرية]	veins	الأوردة
Egyptian dabb lizard	سحلية الضب المصرية	circulatory system	الجهاز الدورى

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Whales and dolphins are .... animals.
   a. desert b. marine c. grassland d. forest
2. My .... is to win the competition.
   a. goal b. gap c. score d. hobby
3. There are different .... like grassland and rainforest.
   a. ecosystems b. illnesses c. leaves d. insects
4. There were three bees .... around the tree.
   a. buzzing b. talking c. smiling d. jumping
5. Find time to .... This can keep your heart healthy.
   a. work b. relax c. beat d. carry

• Unit 2

dunes	كثبان رملية	monument	أثر
valley	وادى	religious	دينى
volcano	بركان	storm-chaser	مطارد العواصف
continent	قارة	hurricane	إعصار
natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
waterfall	شلال مياه	extreme weather	الطقس المتطرف / القاسى
canyon	أخدود (وادى ضيق)	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
climate change	تغير المناخ	flood	فيضان
geographical facts	حقائق جغرافية	storm	عاصفة
rainbow	قوس قزح	volcanoes	براكين
archaeologist	عالم آثار	mud flow	تدفق الطين
cave	كهف	lava	حمم بركانية
century	قرن (مائة عام)	ash	رماد
adventure	مغامرة	ribbon	شريط
ruins	حطام - بقايا	erupt	ينفجر

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. A .... is a low area of land between two mountains.
   a. hill b. hole c. valley d. lake
2. A/An .... is a large cat which usually hunts at night.
   a. buffalo b. elephant c. shark d. leopard
3. A .... is a storm with a strong wind and heavy rain.
   a. flood b. drought c. wave d. hurricane
4. She tied a .... around the present box.
   a. field b. monument c. limestone d. ribbon
5. The weather was perfect and there was a .... wind.
   a. bad b. hard c. strong d. gentle



• Unit 3

raw materials	مواد خام	flax	نبات الكتان
fixed	ثابت	fertile	خصبة
pale	شاحب - باهت (اللون)	linen	خيوط الكتان
container	حاوية	limestone	حجر جيري
fossil fuel	وقود حفري	texture	ملمس
state	حالة	comfortable	مريح
mine	منجم	sticky	لزج
natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	odor	رائحة / عطر
shovel	مجرفة	mass	كتلة
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	rough	قاسٍ / خشن
hole	فتحة	science experiment	تجربة علمية
expert	خبير	syringe	حقنة
economy	اقتصاد	dish detergent	منظف أطباق

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Natural resources are the same as .... materials.

a. low b. row c. raw d. high

2. The smell of something is called a/an ....

a. odor b. texture c. mass d. volume

3. Objects such as rocks are ....

a. hard b. smooth c. sticky d. weak

4. .... is a liquid soap that is used for washing dishes and cooking pots.

a. Maple syrup b. Vegetable oil c. Dish detergent d. Syringe

5. People in ancient Egypt used .... to build houses and other buildings.

a. mud b. gold c. coal d. flax



• Unit 4

force	قوة	gravity	جاذبية
wheel	عجلة	journey	رحلة
push force	قوة الدفع	astronaut	رائد فضاء
pedal	دواسة	air resistance	مقاومة الهواء
brakes	مكابح - فرامل	friction	احتكاك
pull force	قوة السحب	acceleration	تسارع
rope	حبل	advice	نصيحة
spring	زنبرك	future	مستقبل
tires	إطارات	university	جامعة
hook	خُطّاف	tower	برج
paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	builder	عامل بناء
vertically	عموديًا - رأسيًا	inventor	مخترع
dart	سهم	feathers	ريش
tip	حافة - طرف	famous	مشهور
glider	طائرة شراعية	water clock	ساعة مائية

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... force is a force to bring something nearer to you.

a. Push b. Pull c. Mechanical d. Magnetic

2. .... is a force that pulls things to the ground.

a. Water b. Gravity c. Time d. Air

3. A/An .... is somebody who travels into space for a job.

a. engineer b. dentist c. astronaut d. pilot

4. Sara wants to be a/an .... because she likes to invent new things.

a. inventor b. pilot c. engineer d. doctor

5. Birds have two strong .... to help them fly.

a. feathers b. arms c. wings d. beaks





II Language

Unit 1

A. Relative clauses :

(who) → for people (الذى) ← للأشخاص

- This is the doctor who helps sick people.

(which) → for things (الذى) ← لغير العاقل

- The coat which I bought is too big.

(where) → for places (حيث) ← للأماكن

- Cairo is the city where I live.

B. Linking words :

(and) → Fish, chicken and beans are all healthy.

(but) → I like apples, but I don't like oranges.

(because) → I went to the doctor because I was sick.

(so) → He wants to be fit, so he exercises regularly.

C. Modal verbs :

1 will / won't + inf. → for prediction
- I will be happy if my team win the match.

2 can / can't + inf. → for ability
- He can climb the tree.

3 might + inf. → for possibility
- Some rabbits might be dead.

4 must / mustn't + inf. → for obligation
- You must be quiet in the library.

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My little brother .... swim because he is only two months old.
   a. can b. might c. must d. can't
2. You .... help your friends.
   a. aren't b. doesn't c. have d. must
3. Younis is the boy .... wants to be a vet.
   a. which b. where c. when d. who
4. Lara always gives us figs .... are from her garden.
   a. when b. where c. which d. who

5. Do you know the house .... my grandma lives ?
   a. when   b. where   c. who   d. which
6. Yesterday, I was ill .... I didn't go to work.
   a. because   b. so   c. but   d. and
7. Gamila likes swimming, ... she doesn't like running.
   a. but   b. because   c. and   d. so

Unit 2

A The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative : **Subject + inf. + (d - ed - ied)**

ex. - I studied hard.

Negative : **Subject + didn't + inf. ......**

ex. - He didn't eat unhealthy food.

Question :
- **Did + subject + inf. ..... ?**
- **Wh- word + did + subject + inf. ..... ?**

ex. • Did you drop this book ?   • What did you do ?

B The Present Perfect Tense

Affirmative : **Subject + have ('ve) / has ('s) + p.p. ......**

ex. - I've eaten ice cream.

Negative : **Subject + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ......**

ex. - He hasn't visited his aunt.

Question :
- **Have / has + subject + p.p. ..... ?**
- **Wh- word + have / has + subject + p.p. ..... ?**

ex. • Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?
- Yes, I have.   - No, I haven't.

• Where has he gone ? - He has gone to London.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Have you ever .... to China ?
   a. be   b. being   c. were   d. been
2. They .... gone to a pop music concert.
   a. has   b. have   c. does   d. are

3. Aya .... a famous person last weekend.

a. met b. have met c. meets d. meet

4. The children .... the lost puppy already.

a. finds b. is finding c. have found d. has found

5. .... she ever slept in her school ?

a. Does b. Has c. Is d. Can

Unit 3

A First and Second Conditionals (If) :

	أداة الشرط	جملة الشرط (الجملة الثانوية)	جملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية)
First conditional	If إذا / لو	subject + present simple, مضارع بسيط (التصريف الأول للفعل)	subject + will / won't + inf. المصدر ...
Second conditional	If إذا / لو	subject + past simple, ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)	subject + would / wouldn't + inf. المصدر ...

- If we go to the museum, we'll see a big dinosaur skeleton.
- If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

B Reported speech

- In reported speech, we don't use speech marks.
- The verb tenses change.
- Other words change. For example, I changes to ⟶ he or she.

▸ "I go to the library on Mondays," said Amira.

Amira said she went to the library on Mondays.

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. If I .... more time, I'd exercise more.

a. have b. had c. am d. were

2. I would stay at home if it ....

a. rains b. rained c. has rained d. had rained

3. She .... pleased if you came early.

a. would be b. would have been

c. will be d. was

4. Wael said he .... to play tennis.

a. go b. going c. goes d. was going

5. Mohamed said he .... to school.

a. walks b. will walk c. walking d. would walk

Unit 4

Question tag

1. If the verb in the sentence is positive, the question tag is negative.
2. If the verb in the sentence is negative, the question tag is positive.

- This bird can fly, can't it ?
- You live in Egypt, don't you ?

- He didn't play football yesterday, did he ?
- You won't be in sixth grade next year, will you ?

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You came by train, ... you ?

a. don't b. didn't c. aren't d. won't

2. I'm your friend, ... I ?

a. aren't b. am not c. don't d. haven't

3. They will meet us at the park, ... they ?

a. don't b. didn't c. won't d. aren't

4. You .... chocolate, don't you ?

a. liked b. like c. likes d. will like

5. She was lazy at the class, ... she ?

a. isn't b. was c. wasn't d. weren't

Day 4



Writing skill

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

السؤال السابع فى الورقة الامتحانية.

1. favorite – flamingo – My – bird – the – was.
   ....
2. you – traveled – Have – ever – to Luxor ?
   ....
3. use – to carry – We – baskets – things.
   ....
4. has – dinner – Noha – made – for – her family.
   ....
5. space – in – there – Is – gravity ?
   ....
6. play – my friends – I – with – sports.
   ....
7. put – on – I – ribbon – the present – a big.
   ....
8. get – from – We – vitamin D – the sun.
   ....
9. found – bones – The children – dinosaur.
   ....
10. builds – schools – houses – and – A builder.
    ....
11. warming - trees - Mangrove - help us - global - with.
    ....
12. our heart - from - away - move - Arteries - blood.
    ....
13. in – can – Camels – survive – the hot – desert.
    ....
14. is – wood – made – A chair – of.
    ....
15. is – Tension – force – a – pull.
    ....



Important paragraphs and Emails

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الالكترونى التى وردت بالمنهج

New Message

From : mohamed@yahoo.com

TO: rehab@yahoo.com

Subject : Your job in the future

Dear Rehab,
How are you ? I'm happy to write you this email.
I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It's important to study other planets because it helps us solve some of the Earth's problems.
It looks fun to live without gravity. The people float all the time.
Can't wait to see you soon!
Mohamed

"My heart"

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day ! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

"States of water"

Water is a liquid. When you freeze it, it turns to ice. Ice is a solid. When you melt it, it turns to a liquid. When you boil water, it turns from a liquid to a gas. When you freeze water, it turns from a liquid to a solid.

"Natural resources"

Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.

"How to stay healthy"

New Message

From : ahmed@gmail.com

TO: noha@gmail.com

Subject : how to stay healthy

Dear Noha,
I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you ?
We are a healthy family. I love sports. My sister plays tennis. My mom walks to work. My dad rides his bike. We always eat healthy food.
I can't wait to see you!
Ahmed

"Ecosystems"

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things interact with non-living things.

"Mangrove trees"

Mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. They protect non-living and living things in the marine ecosystem. Many little fish swim among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish can't catch them. The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from air than other kinds of trees.



12 Governorates Exams

١٢ اختبارًا من المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate

El Zeitoun Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Kamal has been to many places with his ....

a. friends   b. teacher   c. sisters   d. parents

2. His father is ....

a. a doctor   b. a teacher   c. an engineer   d. a pilot

3. Kamal's father is .... person.

a. an unkind   b. a kind   c. an impolite   d. a cruel

4. Kamal wants to be ....

a. a teacher   b. a nurse   c. a doctor   d. a dentist

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Mona and Heba go ?

....

2. What did Mona eat ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

frozen - steam - ice - heat - boiled

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it (1) .... Some of the water turned to (2) .... We poured the water into a container and put it in a freezer. The water was a (3) .... and turned to (4) .... This experiment was very useful one. We learnt a lot of information from it. We knew more about the states of water.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was expensive, but it was an important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too.

People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a. Egypt   b. honey   c. bee   d. people

2. People made long, round houses out of .... for the bees.

a. mud b. clay c. honey d. papyrus

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How long ago did people keep bees in ancient Egypt ?

....

4. Give a suitable title for the text.

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write [T] (True) or [F] (False).

1. The dugong eats seagrass. ☐
2. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ☐
3. The desert is perfect for gazelles. ☐
4. Lake Nasser is a natural lake. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. The .... eggs were in the sand.
2. The .... is a white animal.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. We met a man .... works in the garden.
   a. who b. which c. whose d. where
2. When did you .... tennis ?
   a. play b. plays c. playing d. played
3. If he .... to the museum, he'll see really big dinosaur skeletons.
   a. went b. goes c. going d. go
4. He likes tennis, ... he's not good at playing it.
   a. but b. so c. because d. and

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. usually – things – the ground – pulls – Gravity – to.

....

2. Has – travelled – Aswan – to – ever - Mariam ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"How to keep your heart healthy"

Guiding elements :

healthy food - sport - relax - exercise – sleep - watch TV

....
....
....
....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Last .... ,our class went to Wadi El Rayan.
   a. year b. week c. month d. day
2. There are two .... there.
   a. rivers b. ponds c. seas d. lakes
3. The waterfalls are .... meters high.
   a. fifty b. sixty seven c. forty two d. ten
4. A/An .... is a place in the desert with water.
   a. lake b. island c. oasis d. mountain

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What would Jana love to be when she grows up?

   ....

2. What does Uncle Wael say?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

survive - ecosystem - forest - community - living things

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. It can be as small as a pond or as big as a (1) .... In an ecosystem, (2) .... such as plants and animals interact with non-living things. The different species make a (3) .... and they all need each other to (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Faten went to the Egyptian Museum last week. Twenty students and two teachers went with her. The school bus took half an hour to get there. They saw lots of ancient monuments. They saw valuable treasures and statues. They spent three hours in the museum. Then they went to a park near the River Nile where they played, ate and enjoyed themselves. They went home at four o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Faten went to the museum by ....
   a. car b. bus c. taxi d. bike
2. They went home at .... o'clock.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people are mentioned in the text ?

....

4. Where did they go after visiting the Egyptian Museum ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write [T] (True) or [F] (False).

1. Wadi el Gemal is a terrible place for gazelles. ☐
2. Gazelles can't run quickly on the desert. ☐
3. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake. ☐
4. The seagrass was very sweet. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari was ....
2. The crocodile wanted to .... Jubari.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. I .... finished my work.

   a. has b. have c. am d. are

2. I play football .... tennis.

   a. and b. so c. because d. but

3. We met a man .... works in a garden.

   a. who b. which c. where d. when

4. Did you .... to the park, yesterday?

   a. goes b. went c. go d. gone

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. paintings - are - caves - There - in.

....

2. to - I - on Mondays - go - library - the.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A trip to Luxor and Aswan"

Guiding elements :

last month - train - hotel - High Dam - temples
- the Valley of the Kings - sunny weather

....

....

....

....

3 Alexandria Governorate El-Montazah Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Hatem is a/an .... boy.
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. naughty d. bad
2. He wants to be a .... when he grows up.
   a. pilot b. teacher c. doctor d. vet
3. He has to study hard and to be good at ....
   a. math b. Arabic c. science d. art
4. He is interested in ....
   a. swimming b. reading c. painting d. flying

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did people start to live near the Nile?

   ....

2. Why do visitors come to Egypt?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

steam - ice - water - put - heated

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She (1) .... the water until it boiled. Some of the (2) .... turned to steam. Then we (3) .... the water into a container and put it in a freezer. The water froze and turned to (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hedaya Malak is a very important Egyptian sports person. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honour. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practising Taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of fourteen. She won many important awards. She won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The Olympic Games in 2021 was in ....
   a. Paris b. Tokyo c. Delhi d. Cairo
2. Hedaya carried her country's .... in 2021.
   a. medal b. cup c. club d. flag

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Hedaya Malak's sport ?

....

4. Are you proud of Hedaya Malak ?

....

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Jubari was not brave. ☐
2. A dead tree which Jubari saw in water was a hungry crocodile. ☐
3. Turtles lay eggs in the sand. ☐
4. The mangroves were too salty. ☐

B. **Complete the following sentences.**

1. Subira is Jubari's ....
2. Jubari met the Nubian .... on the mountain.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Adam is the boy .... wants to be a vet.
   a. which b. where c. when d. who
2. I .... finished my homework yet.
   a. have b. hasn't c. haven't d. wasn't
3. He would be happy if he .... the gold medal.
   a. wins b. is winning c. won d. win
4. We .... to bed early yesterday.
   a. went b. gone c. go d. goes

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. very - hot - is - Desert - The Sahara.

....

2. ever - you - Have - travelled - plane - by ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A sport you like"

Guiding elements :

good at - to the club - with my friends - won the match - happy

....

....

....

....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate El Qanater Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Rainforests are characterized by .... climate conditions throughout the year.
   a. cold b. snow c. warm d. stormy
2. The average temperature .... there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit.
   a. recorded b. played c. needed d. weeded
3. Rainforests are .... to the equator.
   a. far b. near c. south d. north
4. A huge .... of animals can live in the rainforests.
   a. variety b. possibility c. probability d. ability

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Does Ramy walk to his school ?

   ....
2. Where does Ramy learn math and science ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

waterfalls – sand – man-made – Nile - making

The valley of Wadi El Rayan is an area of 1759 km^2. It is located about 65 km southwest of Faiyum city and 80 km west of the (1) .... River. The Wadi has been used for (2) .... lakes from agricultural drainage. There are three sulphur springs with extensive mobile (3) .... dunes. Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls are considered to be the largest (4) .... in Egypt.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A body system is a collection of parts able to work together to serve a common purpose-growth, reproduction and survival. Each part of a system depends on the other parts to perform tasks that can't be achieved by single part acting alone. Our bodies are made up of countless cells all requiring oxygen to carry out the important process of respiration. In this process, cells use oxygen gas and produce carbon dioxide gas – a waste product that must be removed from the body. The process of breathing allows these gases to be exchanged between the blood and lungs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Our bodies are made up of .... cells.
   a. counted b. countless c. few d. no

2. Cells use .... and produce carbon dioxide.

a. oxygen b. carbon dioxide c. oil d. petrol

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do parts of the body work together ?

....

4. Where can oxygen and carbon dioxide gases be exchanged?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write [T] (True) or [F] (False).

1. Jubari drank a lot of salty water. [ ]
2. Wadi el Gemal is Wadi of the Camels. [ ]
3. Acacia trees give gazelles food and water. [ ]
4. Jubari saw a brown turtle on the beach. [ ]

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Gazelles can't run fast because the sand is too ....
2. Jubari .... the biggest mountain.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. You .... look right and left before crossing the road.

a. must b. mustn't c. can't d. won't

2. I .... finished my homework yet.

a. won't b. hasn't c. don't d. haven't

3. Karma didn't .... to the park yesterday.

a. went b. goes c. go d. going

4. If I had enough money, I .... buy a new car.

a. will b. would c. have d. has

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. dangerous – is – Global – warming – for – the Earth.

....

2. the tallest – mountain - Mount Kilimanjaro – in – is – Africa.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Natural resources"

Guiding elements :

renewable – sun – soil – nature – solar energy – non-renewable – fossil fuels – coal

....

....

....

....

5 Sharkia Governorate — West Zagazig Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. It's .... Salma and her family are going for a holiday.
   a. winter b. spring c. summer d. autumn
2. Salma and her family are going to ....
   a. Aswan b. Luxor c. Marsa Alam d. Alexandria
3. Salma looks out of the .... window.
   a. bus b. car c. train d. plane
4. Salma sees a gold ....
   a. fine b. mine c. line d. coin

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Ali?

....

2. Does he work on the farm?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

club - best - football - friends - hospital

Khaled : Do you enjoy playing sports ?
Waleed : Yes, I do.
Khaled : What game do you like (1) .... ?
Waleed : I like (2) .... the best.
Khaled : Where do you play it?
Waleed : In the (3) ....
Khaled : Who do you play with ?
Waleed : I play with my (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's a beautiful day. **It** is hot and the sun is shining. The sky is blue and the birds are singing. A man is sitting next to the river. He is fishing. He wants a fish for his basket which is **empty**. He has not got a fish. Look! A big fish is swimming in the river. The man can see it. "Come here!" the man says loudly. It is swimming quickly down the river. The man didn't catch it because it was just an old shoe.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**empty**" is ....
   a. full b. little c. fall d. tall

2. The man didn't catch the fish because it was just ....

a. a big fish b. an old shoe c. an old boat d. a shark

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the weather like?

....

4. Why does the man want the fish ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write [T] (True) or [F] (False).

1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal. ☐
2. Wadi el Gemal isn't perfect for gazelles. ☐
3. The first animal Jubari met was a dugong. ☐
4. Jubari was brave and curious. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences :

1. Jubari didn't want to live in ....
2. .... trees need gazelles.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. I have another cousin .... lives near a wadi.

   a. which b. where c. who d. what

2. He is poor, ... he is happy.

   a. and b. but c. so d. because

3. How .... is mount kilimanjaro ? - It's 5,895 meters tall.

   a. long b. wide c. tall d. big

4. If I .... my mother, she would be happy.

   a. helped b. help c. helps d. helping

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - high - How - waterfalls - the?

....

2. have - didn't - She - chicken - breakfast - for.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Things you do on weekends"

Guiding elements : play - visit - help - watch - beach

....

....

....

....

6 Menofia Governorate   Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. .... move blood away from our heart.
   a. Veins   b. Arteries   c. Muscles   d. Lungs
2. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our ....
   a. stomach   b. intestine   c. blood   d. veins
3. We don't use .... like plants do.
   a. oxygen   b. carbon dioxide   c. blood   d. vitamins
4. We get vitamin D from ....
   a. sunlight   b. rain   c. darkness   d. air

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where can mangrove trees grow?

....

2. How do the roots of mangrove trees help them?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

Falls – canyon -eroded -kings- book

Ahmed : What are you reading ?
Kareem : I'm reading a (1) ....
Ahmed : What's it about ?
Kareem : It's about Victoria (2) ....
Ahmed : Where does the water fall ?
Kareem : It falls into a big (3) ....
Ahmed : What makes this canyon?
Kareem : The water (4) .... the rocks.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many deserts in the world and they are all dry. The weather there is usually very hot. In some deserts, there are a lot of rocks and in others there is a lot of sand. In the sand deserts, wind forms sand hills. The plants and animals that live in the desert do not need much water. Desert animals can live for a long time without drinking. They sometimes get water from plants. The leaves of desert plants are often very small. This helps the plants to keep water inside them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Deserts are usually ....
   a. wet   b. rainy   c. dry   d. cloudy

2. Desert animals sometimes get water from ....

a. sand b. rocks c. plants d. hills

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the weather like in deserts?

....

4. Why are the leaves of desert plants often very small?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari found Wadi el Gazelles. ☐
2. Lake Nasser is a man-made lake. ☐
3. Crocodiles are animals with small teeth. ☐
4. Jubari met dugong in the east. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences :

1. Subira is Jubari's ....
2. Jubari was ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. This is the lizard .... lives in the desert.

a. which b. where c. who d. when

2. Chocolate is unhealthy, ... I like it.

a. and b. so c. but d. because

3. Did he .... to the cinema yesterday ?

a. go b. went c. gone d. has gone

4. She has just .... her room.

a. cleaned b. clean c. cleans d. cleaning

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can't - Most trees - salt - in - grow - water.

....

2. Dina - good - at - Is - tennis - playing ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Wonders in Africa"

Guiding elements : Victoria Falls - natural - man-made - Pyramids - Egypt

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Ahmed visited the Egyptian Museum in ....
   a. Luxor b. Alexandria c. Aswan d. Cairo
2. They travelled to the museum by ....
   a. car b. bus c. train d. plane
3. Ahmed was very ....
   a. excited b. tired c. lucky d. unhappy
4. He bought some jewelry for his ....
   a. mother b. sister c. grandma d. teacher

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Amira?

....

2. Where does Amira live?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

unhealthy - vegetables- healthy - sports-relax

Ali is a healthy boy. He loves (1) .... He plays tennis, football and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, (2) ...., and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very (3) ....
In the evening, he wants to (4) ...., so he reads a book. He has a healthy family, too. His sister Dina plays tennis and his sister Amal plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his bike.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sally and Laura are friends. Sally is Egyptian and Laura is British. Sally and Laura are very good at school. Sally likes reading, but Laura likes cooking. They talk together a lot every day. They are very sad when they say goodbye.

One day, Sally went to Laura's house. Sally was excited, but she was worried about British food. Laura gave Sally some cookies to eat. She made them with oats, butter and honey. Sally smiled and tried a little. "It's **delicious**! I love it, how do you make them?" Sally said. Laura was very happy and gave Sally a book about food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Laura is ....
   a. French b. British c. Egyptian d. American

2. The underlined word "**delicious**" means ....

a. yummy b. awful c. bad d. bored

B. Answer the following questions

3. What did Sally eat?

....

4. Give a suitable title for the text.

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari is a brave and curious gazelle. ☐
2. Camels only live in Wadi el Gemal. ☐
3. Subira taught her son how to stay away from predators. ☐
4. Gazelles favorite food is the mangrove. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences :

1. Jubari ran north, south, east and west to .... Wadi el Gazelles.
2. Subira showed Jubari which plants to eat and where to rest on ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Younis is a boy .... wants to be a scientist.
   a. which b. who c. where d. what
2. Lamar eats fruit .... it's healthy.
   a. and b. so c. but d. because
3. If we .... to the desert, we would visit an oasis.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
4. There isn't any grass, so the rabbit .... be hungry.
   a. can b. will c. can't d. won't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the river - a lot of - in – There - water - is.

....

2. visited - yet - mountain - Have - the - you ?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A journey to a favorite place"

Guiding elements :

for holiday - my family - summer - natural resources - visit - river - monuments

....

....

....

....

8 Beheira Governorate   Koum Hamada Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Nabq is a very big National Park in South ....
   a. Africa   b. America   c. Sinai   d. Pole
2. Along the coast, there is a mangrove ....
   a. forest   b. animal   c. fire   d. food
3. Mangrove trees can grow in the .... water.
   a. sugar   b. juicy   c. milky   d. salt
4. Mangrove trees have amazing ....
   a. boots   b. roots   c. boats   d. nets

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Seleem love?

....

2. Why doesn't Seleem eat a lot of chocolate?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

more - regularly - cycle - important - useless

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it is (1) .... to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or (2) ...., you make your heart work harder. If you exercise (3) ...., your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need (4) .... easily.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Amazon is the world's largest tropical rainforest. It covers an area of nearly 2.8 million square miles, which is about the size of the continent of Australia. The Amazon rainforest gets its life from the majestic Amazon River, the world's second largest river, which runs directly through the heart of the region. There is a clear link between the health of the Amazon and the health of the planet. The rainforests help the local and global climate. Deforestation releases significant amounts of carbon, which has **negative** results around the world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the passage is the ....
   a. Nile Valley   b. Amazon Rainforest
   c. Thames Barrier   d. Seine River
2. The underlined word "**negative**" means not ....
   a. positive   b. transitive   c. initiative   d. native

A. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the world's largest tropical rainforest?

....

4. How does the Amazon rainforest get its life?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari is a dorcas gazelle. ☐
2. Jubari was very weak. ☐
3. Predators are dangerous animals. ☐
4. Acacia trees give gazelles candies. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his ....
2. Jubari and Subira live in the Wadi of the ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We learned about the area .... we live.
   a. who b. that c. where d. which
2. Nadine goes to the pool .... she likes swimming.
   a. so b. but c. and d. because
3. He has lived here .... twenty years.
   a. for b. since c. ago d. in
4. She hasn't arrived ....
   a. just b. yet c. never d. ever

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a garden - who - a man - met - We - works in.

....

2. a ship - travelled - ever - you - on - Have?

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job you would like to do in the future"

Guiding elements:

doctor - help - sick - examine - patients - give - medicine - work - hospital - travel - abroad - work - charity

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. We stopped in a .... to have a picnic.
   a. beach   b. field   c. park   d. restaurant
2. We had a/an .... pie and bread.
   a. meat   b. strawberry   c. apple   d. banana
3. We watched two little .... building a nest.
   a. ants   b. dogs   c. birds   d. cats
4. My dad played the ....
   a. drum   b. flute   c. violin   d. guitar

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Ahmed play?

....

2. Where did Ahmed and his sister eat?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

water - Park - go - mangrove- Where

Hana : Where did you go last summer?
Hany : I went to Nabq National (1) ....
Hana : Oh! great. (2) .... is it?
Hany : It is in South Sinai.
Hana : Why did you go there?
Hany : To learn about (3) .... trees. When I arrived at the beach, I saw trees growing out of the sea. Mangrove trees are special.
Hana : Why?
Hany : Mangrove trees can grow in salt (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

When I first saw the Winter Palace, I couldn't believe my eyes. It is huge and it seems to go on forever, I really liked the green walls and the tall white columns with gold at the top. You must go inside the palace because it is stunning. There is gold everywhere. There are lights. **They** make everything look shiny and new. Now the Winter Palace is full of treasures from the past. I wanted to see everything in the Winter Palace but you can't see everything in one day. There were rooms full of paintings.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about the ....
   a. Winter Palace   b. River Thames   c. Hyde Park   d. Pyramids

2. The underlined pronoun " They " refers to ....

a. dates b. doors c. plates d. lights

B. Answer the following questions

3. What can you see in the Winter Palace?

....

4. Why must you go inside the palace?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was very brave. ☐
2. Gazelles' favorite food is the daffodil. ☐
3. Subira didn't teach Jubari how to stay away from predators. ☐
4. Wadi El Gemal is in Egypt's Eastern desert. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. In Wadi El Gemal, there are many trees called ....
2. Jubari wanted to play with ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. She .... visited Luxor before.
   a. have b. haven't c. hasn't d. are
2. Mona is the girl .... always draws pictures of animals .
   a. where b. who c. which d. why
3. Have you .... sailed on a boat on the Nile ?
   a. never b. ever c. just d. already
4. Sherif has .... fish from the Nile and the Red Sea many times.
   a. eat b. ate c. eating d. eaten

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. made - Mount Kilimanjaro - volcanoes - three - of - is .

....

2. Desert - covers - The - countries - Sahara- eleven.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The sports we have in Egypt"

Guiding elements :

- What's your favorite sport?
- Is there a famous player in Egypt ?

....

....

....

....

10 Ismailia Governorate — Ismailia Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Ziad wants to be a/an ....
   a. pilot   b. astronaut   c. teacher   d. engineer
2. Ziad is interested in .... and stars.
   a. planets   b. sun   c. food   d. clothes
3. .... is one of the planets.
   a. Moon   b. Mars   c. Sun   d. Star
4. People can float without ....
   a. stars   b. water   c. planets   d. gravity

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where are Reem and Ahmed going on the holiday ?

....

2. How will they go ?

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

When -inventor - kite - help - What

Grandpa : What are you doing, Ali?
Ali : I am trying to make a (1) ....
Grandpa : (2) .... do you use to make it?
Ali : Plastic, wood and paper.
Grandpa : I think you'll be an (3) .... when you grow up.
Ali : Thanks, Grandpa.
Grandpa : Do you want any (4) .... ?
Ali : Yes, please Grandpa.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many animals in the world today are endangered. People always kill animals for their meat or their skin. Others are killed because they are harmful to farmers. Some animals, such as tigers and elephants use to live in great numbers in India. But people have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive.

In South America, many different birds and animals have lost their habitat in the forest because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then use the land for farming or for building roads and towns. We are too late to save some animals however, there are now some organizations to protect endangered animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The text is talking about ....
   a. pollution   b. endangered animals
   c. sports   d. holiday

2. Tigers live in great numbers in ....

a. China b. Egypt c. France d. India

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do people kill animals ?

....

4. What happened when people cut down trees ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The crocodile was very dangerous. ☐
2. Jubari was brave. ☐
3. Turtles' eggs are in the sand. ☐
4. Gebel Elba is the perfect home for Jubari. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Gazelles' favorite food is .... tree.
2. The mangrove forest is by the ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Rana will win, ... she?

a. will b. don't c. does d. won't

2. I have .... camels in the desert.

a. saw b. seen c. see d. sees

3. Friday .... a holiday in my country.

a. is b. are c. does d. has

4. I didn't .... your uncle last week.

a. meet b. met c. meeting d. meets

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. you - travelled - Have -to - ever - Luxor ?

....

2. inventor - Abbas Ibn Fernas - an - was.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"The Pyramids"

Guiding elements :

man-made - ancient Egyptians - built - history

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Our .... beats over 100,000 times a day.
   a. stomach b. heart c. lung d. leg
2. It is important to keep our heart ....
   a. bad b. natural c. healthy d. unhealthy
3. If you exercise regularly, your heart works ....
   a. better b. worse c. badly d. unhealthy
4. The human heart .... less than half a kilo.
   a. exercise b. beats c. weighs d. work

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How does the water turn to steam?

....

2. What will happen if you put water in a freezer?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

ecosystem- living things- interact-survive-trees

Mona wanted to learn about the Amazon rainforest. A lot of people cut down the (1) .... in the Amazon rainforest. The Amazon rainforest is a very important (2) .... All the (3) .... in the rainforest need each other. Mona wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive, but an important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food and it tastes sweet. They used it as a medicine too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People made a long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. The houses of the bees are called ....
   a. knives b. kites c. hives d. hooves
2. They moved hives on boats so bees could find ....
   a. flowers b. leaves c. bananas d. animals

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When did people keep bees to make honey in Egypt?

....

4. Why did everyone like honey?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Jubari was very brave and curious. ☐
2. Jubari could drink the sea water. ☐
3. Gebel Elba is a low mountain. ☐
4. Acacia leaves give food to the crocodile. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences:

1. The dead tree in water moved; it wasn't a tree it was a ....
2. A hoof is the hard .... of an animal.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Have you ever .... to China ?
   a. be b. being c. been d. were
2. She plays tennis, ... she ?
   a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. didn't
3. They .... lucky that day. They didn't meet the famous scientist.
   a. was b. weren't c. wasn't d. isn't
4. Waleed likes fish, ... he doesn't like lamb.
   a. so b. and c. because d. but

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can't - Most trees - salt - in - grow - water.

....

2. like - looked - a silver - The Nile - ribbon.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Ecosystems"

Guiding elements :

kinds - living things - non-living things - interact - survive

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. All jobs are ....
   a. difficult b. important c. boring d. interesting
2. The school .... looks after the books in the library.
   a. librarian b. guide c. teacher d. manager
3. A geologist works in the .... industry.
   a. economy b. tourism c. mining d. farming
4. The guide explains .... to tourists.
   a. geography b. math c. English d. history

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Sara want to be ?

   ....

2. Who does Dalia like working with ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

land -writing -smallest -bird -animals

Mona : What are you doing, Sara?

Sara : I'm (1) .... an English paragraph.

Mona : What is it about?

Sara : It is about (2) .... and birds.

Mona : What is the biggest animal on (3) .... ?

Sara : The biggest animal on land is the African elephant .

Mona : What is the smallest (4) .... ?

Sara : It is the bee hummingbird.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, I am Waleed's dad and this is my farm. I've got some sheep and two buffaloes on my farm. We used to have donkeys, but we do not have any now. I grow a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes. We live near the river and this year, there are two Egyptian geese on the river and they have three young goslings. They are really small. I live in a traditional house with my family. I have three children. Waleed is my youngest child. The women in my family are my wife and my mother. And there are two men, me and my dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Waleed's family lives near the ....
   a. ocean b. desert c. river d. forest

2. Waleed's dad has three young ....

a. donkeys b. sheep c. buffaloes d. goslings

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who is Waleed ?

....

4. Give a suitable title for the text.

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Wadi el Gemal is in Egypt's Eastern desert. ☐
2. Jubari wasn't very brave. ☐
3. Jubari found "Wadi of the Gazelles". ☐
4. The beach was too sandy. ☐

B. Complete the following sentences.

1. Jubari climbed the biggest mountain. It was very ....
2. Subira showed Jubari which plants to eat and where to rest on .... days.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. She isn't happy, ... she ?

a. isn't b. aren't c. is d. are

2. Ahmed has .... fish from the Nile many times.

a. already eaten b. ate c. eaten already d. eat

3. If I found dinosaur bones, I .... the museum.

a. would called b. would call c. will call d. called

4. Do you know my aunt .... lives in New York?

a. which b. where c. who d. does

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the guitar - said - he - Samy - play - could

....

2. brought - the mangrove forests - the bees - to - The people.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job you'd like to do"

Guiding elements :

grow up- would - architect - houses - buildings

....
....
....
....



Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع

Day 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

A. When I was in Luxor, I told my mom that I wanted to fly like a bird. My mom bought us tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. I watched a hot air balloon pilot lit the flames. Soon, we were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor.

B. My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. They help make things such as skateboards and roads ! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job.

2 Listen and answer the questions:

A. The kingfisher visited her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. They could hear trucks and people shouting and the animals were worried.

B. I'm Adham. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves. I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air !

1 Cairo Governorate

El Zeitoun Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I'm Ahmed. I'm 12 years old. My friend Kamal is 13 years old. Kamal likes traveling. He has been to many places with his parents. His father is a doctor. He helps sick people. He is a kind person. His mother is a teacher. Kamal wants to be a doctor like his father.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Mona and Heba are cousins. They like to have fun together. Mona and Heba went to the club yesterday to play tennis. They like sports and they like to be healthy. For lunch, Heba ate vegetables and frozen yogurt. Mona ate fruits and cheese.

2 Giza Governorate

North Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: one at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. An oasis is a place in the desert with water.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Jana. I'm in grade five. My father is a pilot and my mother is a nurse. I want to be a teacher of English. I like math and English very much. My Uncle Wael says that I'm clever. He thinks I will be a brilliant teacher one day.

3 Alexandria Governorate

El-Montazah Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hatem is 15 years old. He's a healthy boy. He does exercises and plays sports. He wants to be a doctor when grows up. He is a good student. He has to study hard and to be good at science. He has many hobbies. He's interested in reading.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Egypt is a country with a long history. It has the River Nile. People started to live near the Nile thousands of years ago. The soil next to the Nile was fertile

and good for growing different kinds of food. Visitors come to Egypt to see the pyramids.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate
El Qanater Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Rainforests have different climates and different animals. Rainforests are characterized by stormy climate conditions throughout the year. The average temperature recorded there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit. Rainforests are south to the equator. A huge variety of animals can live in the rainforests.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Ramy is a good boy. He wakes up early. He eats eggs and cheese. His school is near. He walks to school. He meets his friends at school. He likes math and science. He learns math and science at school. He goes home at 2 o'clock. He has lunch and does his homework.

5 Sharkia Governorate
West Zagazig Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

It's summer. Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holdiay. Marsa Alam is on the Red Sea. The beaches there are very beautiful and the water is clean. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a gold mine.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Ali. I have a big family. I have two brothers and three sisters. I'm twelve years old. My uncle lives in Mansoura. He has a farm. The farm has different animals and plants. I work on the farm to help him. I like to grow carrots best. I like animals too.

6 Menofia Governorate
Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. When we arrived at the beach, we saw mangrove forests. Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees' leaves, they felt very thick.

7 Gharbia Governorate
English Supervision

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Ahmed likes history very much. He is fond of the Egyptian history. Last week, he visited the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. He went to the museum with his friends. They travelled to the museum by car. They saw many historical objects. Ahmed was very excited. Ahmed bought some jewelry for his mother.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Amira. I'm sixteen years old. I get up early. I have beans and eggs for breakfast. I like to be healthy. I play sports and do exercises. I live in Cairo. It's the capital of Egypt. It's a big city. I like Cairo very much.

8 Beheira Governorate
Koum Hamada Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest,

which is the largest in the Red Sea. When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that food isn't very healthy.

9 Port Said Governorate

East Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Yesterday, I and my family had a nice day. We stopped in a nice park to have a picnic. We had an apple pie and bread. We drank mango juice. The park is full of amazing views. We watched two little birds building a nest. We wanted to listen to music. My dad played the violin. We had fun.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Ahmed has a healthy family. They like to be fit and have a healthy body. Ahmed likes sports. He played volleyball. He is a good player. His sister Nada went swimming in the swimming pool. After the club, Ahmed and his sister went to eat at a restaurant. They had salad, rice and potatoes.

10 Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Space is full of amazing things. Ziad wants to be an astronaut. He wants to find out space. He is interested in planets and stars. Sun is the biggest star. There are eight planets. We live on Earth. Mars is one of the planets. It's red. People can float without gravity.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Reem and Ahmed are going on a holiday. They will go to Alexandria. They like Alexandria very much. They will go by train. They will swim in the sea and have lunch at a big restaurant. They will go to Alexandria Library and take photos with their friends. They will have fun.

11 Menia Governorate

Matai Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily. The human heart weighs less than half a kilo.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

Water has three states; liquid, solid and gas. Some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another. If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas. If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid.

12 Assiut Governorate

El Koussia Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

All jobs are important. The doctor looks after sick people. The nurse helps the patients. The school librarian looks after the books in the library. The geologist works in the mining industry. The driver drives people to many places. The guide explains history to tourists.

2 Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Sara. I'm sixteen years old. My father is an engineer. My mother is a dentist. I want to be an engineer like my father. My sister Dalia is fourteen years old. She wants to be a vet. She likes working with animals. She likes to feed and play with animals.

Sample Test 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eman wants to be a/an ....
   a. doctor b. astronaut c. pilot d. engineer
2. People without .... float all the time.
   a. stars b. gravity c. sun d. water
3. Eman interested in the .... and the planets.
   a. sports b. clothes c. stars d. foods
4. .... help us solve some of the Earth's problem.
   a. Moons b. Suns c. Plants d. Planets

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How many times does the heart beat a day ?
   ....
2. What happens when you exercise regularly ?
   ....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

paper - make - papyrus - plant - medicine

Papyrus is a strong (1) .... People used papyrus to (2) .... things such as baskets and sandals. The most important thing they made from it was (3) ....
The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt! Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt.

The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice. Do any of you know what flax is? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is the ....
   a. museum
   b. natural resources in ancient Egypt
   c. learning at the class   d. agriculture
2. The underlined pronoun it referes to the ....
   a. soil   b. cotton   c. flax   d. crops

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is flax ?

   ....

4. How do you know that the ancient Egyptians were successful ? Mention two reasons.

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. The acacia tree gives gazelles food and water.		
2. Jubari was thirsty.		
3. People made Lake Nasser because they needed food.		
4. The crocodile was very dangerous.		

B. Complete the following.

1. .... eat acacia tree seeds and take them to new places.
2. Subira told Jubari how to stay away from ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. She .... pleased if you came early.
   a. would be b. would have been
   c. will be d. was
2. If he .... his homework, his teacher wouldn't be nervous.
   a. would be b. did c. does d. do
3. Hassan said that he .... going to the beach.
   a. to like b. like c. liked d. likes
4. Did she .... to the park four days ago ?
   a. go b. goes c. went d. gone

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. favorite – flamingo – My – bird – the – was.

   ....

2. you – traveled – Have – ever – to Luxor ?

   ....

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Resources in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- made
- flax
- linen
- honey
- fertile soil
- the Nile

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 2



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Water is a ....
   a. ice b. steam c. liquid d. gas
2. When you .... water, it turns to ice.
   a. boil b. freeze c. melt d. bend
3. Ice is a ....
   a. solid b. liquid c. steam d. gas
4. When you .... ice, it turns to a liquid.
   a. walk b. melt c. run d. boil

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does a natural resource mean ?

   ....

2. What energy does the sun give us ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

shovel – dinosaur – digging – mountains – going

Grandpa : Where are you (1) .... tomorrow, children ?
Dalia : Nancy and I are going into the mountains with Dad.
Grandpa : When I was a boy, people told me that there were dinosaur bones in the mountains.
Dalia : Do you mean real (2) .... bones ?
Grandpa : I think so. My friend was (3) .... a hole there and he found some bones.
Nancy : Wow ! Dalia, let's take a (4) .... when we go to the mountains.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things.

When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company. He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful. He is now learning Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sherif is a ………………… person.
   a. successful b. lazy c. slow d. unkind
2. Japanese is the language in ………………… .
   a. Egypt b. Italy c. Japan d. China

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How do we know that Sherif is interested in engineering when he was 10 ?

   ……………………………………………………………………………………
4. What experience helped Sherif to start his own company ?

   ……………………………………………………………………………………

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari saw a Nubian ibex on the mountain.		
2. A hoof is the hard foot of an animal.		
3. The mangroves were too sandy.		
4. The beach was too salty.		

B. Complete the following.

1. The desert is perfect for gazelles to ………………… .
2. The beach was too ………………… .

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The cat has jumped very high, ... it ?
   a. haven't b. didn't c. hasn't d. isn't
2. Yesterday, I was ill .... I didn't go to work.
   a. because b. so c. but d. and
3. Gamila likes swimming, ... she doesn't like running.
   a. but b. because c. and d. so
4. If we used more renewable energy, it .... better for our planet.
   a. will b. would be c. will be d. would

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. use – to carry – We – baskets – things.

....

2. has – dinner – her – Noha – made – for – family.

....

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Extreme weather events

Guiding elements :

- dust storm
- flood
- hurricane
- forecast
- thunderstorm
- dangerous

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 3



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We are a .... family.
   a. tired b. bad c. healthy d. unhealthy
2. My sister plays ....
   a. football b. tennis c. squash d. volleyball
3. My mom walks to ....
   a. station b. store c. school d. work
4. My dad rides his ....
   a. taxi b. bike c. car d. bus

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Adham and his parents go ?

   ....

2. What does Adham want to be ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

invented – working – bird – inventor – feathers

Ali : Are you a builder ?
Ayman : No, I'm a/an (1) ....
Ali : What are you (2) .... on now ?
Ayman : I'm trying to find out how to fly like a/an
(3) ....
Ali : What are you carrying ?
Ayman : These are my wings. They're made of wood and
(4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive, but it was an important natural resource.

Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees.

Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of a pyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is the importance of ....
   a. honey b. salt c. paper d. mud
2. The underlined adjective expensive means ....
   a. not cheap b. cheap c. little money d. low

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why is honey important ? Give two reasons.

....

4. Why did they move the hives along the Nile in boats ?

....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Seagrass grows under the sea.		
2. Lake Nasser is a natural lake.		
3. Jubari looked for Subira.		
4. Jubari was curious.		

B. Complete the following.

1. Turtle's eggs are in the ....
2. The Nubian ibex lives in the ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They have .... animals at the zoo.
   a. saw   b. see   c. seen   d. sees
2. She .... study English for the exam tomorrow.
   a. have   b. must   c. can't   d. haven't
3. You .... use your phone at the classroom.
   a. must   b. can   c. might   d. mustn't
4. I .... visit my grandma or my uncle. I'm not sure.
   a. doesn't   b. might   c. mustn't   d. do

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. space – in – there – Is – gravity ?

   ....

2. play – my friends – I – with – sports.

   ....

8 Write an email of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Write an email to your friend Heba about states of water. Your name is Nada and your email address is nada@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is heba99@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

- boil
- solid
- liquid
- gas
- melt
- freeze

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 4



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My mom bought us .... for the balloon festival.
   a. flamingo b. kite c. eagle d. bird
2. We were flying over the beautiful city of ....
   a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Luxor d. Aswan
3. A hot air balloon .... hit the flames.
   a. fishermen b. teacher c. pilot d. officer
4. We saw different .... flying in the sky.
   a. planes b. cars c. kites d. birds

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What can you see in an oasis ?

   ....

2. Where is an oasis ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

dunes – dry – hot – eleven – snow

The Sahara Desert is the largest (1) .... desert in the world. It covers (2) .... countries. Some of the sand (3) .... can be 180 meters high. Although it is a hot and (4) .... place, some animals and plants live here.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation. Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most popular places to stay here. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown.

Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center. It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries. Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful, modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. The Mediterranean coast b. the Red Sea
   c. Damietta d. the Western Desert
2. Damietta has the largest number of .... in Egypt.
   a. fishing boats b. modern buildings
   c. clothes d. food

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What are orchards ?

   ....

4. What island is there in Damietta ?

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Acacia trees are good for gazelles.		
2. Turtle's eggs were in the sand.		
3. Jubari met the crocodile in Gebel Elba.		
4. Jubari ran away from the crocodile.		

B. Complete the following.

1. The turtle was ....
2. The mangrove forest is by the ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This is the shop .... you can buy oranges.
   a. what b. where c. who d. which
2. Younis is the boy .... wants to be a vet.
   a. which b. where c. when d. who
3. .... I use your book, please ?
   a. Must b. Can c. Will d. Might
4. He .... be busy at work I'm not sure.
   a. must b. mustn't c. might d. will

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. put – on – I – ribbon – the present – a big.

   ....

2. get – from – We – vitamin D – the sun.

   ....

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

A job you would like to do in the future

Guiding fact file :

Name of the job	a doctor
What do you need to learn before you can do this job ?	study medicine
What do you do in this job ?	help people who are ill
Where do you work ?	many places like hospitals

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 5



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Jana would love to be a/an ....
   a. vet b. teacher c. doctor d. engineer
2. You need to understand .... to be an engineer.
   a. science b. math c. geology d. social studies
3. An engineer's job sounds really ....
   a. boring b. interesting c. terrible d. awful
4. Engineers make things such as skateboards and ....
   a. roads b. windows c. tables d. chairs

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Amal want to be ?

....

2. Why is important to study other planets ?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

freeze – solid – boil – gas – liquid

Solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another. When you (1) .... water, it turns to steam. Water is a liquid. If you (2) .... water, it turns to ice. Steam is a (3) .... When ice gets warm, it melts and turns to liquid. Ice is a (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money. One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed. The following morning, the shoemaker

couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them" he said. The shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us." They were very surprised to see two little elves ! The elves started to make the shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word find out means ....
   a. help b. make c. read d. know
2. There was a pair of .... on the table.
   a. socks b. shoes c. glasses d. shorts

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the moral of the story ?

   ....

4. Why did the elves help the shoemaker and his wife ?

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Turtle's eggs are in the sand. ☐ ☐
2. Jubari's legs became very tired. ☐ ☐
3. The Nubian ibex didn't know the Wadi of the Gazelles. ☐ ☐
4. Lake Nasser is a natural resource of water. ☐ ☐

B. Complete the following.

1. Donga is a big white .... in water
2. The biggest mountain was very ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My little brother .... swim because he is only two months old.
   a. can b. might c. must d. can't
2. Lara always gives us figs .... are from her garden.
   a. when b. where c. which d. who
3. Do you know the house .... my grandma lives ?
   a. when b. where c. who d. which
4. Friday .... a holiday, isn't it ?
   a. is b. are c. does d. has

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. space – into – stops – Gravity – people – floating up – from.

   ....

2. limestone – transport – did – some – How – people ?

   ....

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Gases

Guiding fact file :

color	Some gases have a pale color, although you can't usually see gases.
change	Gases can change from one state to another.
shape	Gases don't have a fixed shape.

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 6



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mangrove trees .... non-living and living things.
   a. interact b. protect c. plant d. live
2. Many little .... swim among the roots of the trees.
   a. penguins b. flamingos c. dogs d. fish
3. Mangrove trees .... the environment in many ways.
   a. help b. swim c. sell d. cover
4. The .... of the mangrove trees take four time more carbon dioxide from air.
   a. flowers b. leaves c. stems d. roots

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are man-made wonders in Egypt ?
   ....
2. Why do people come from all over the world ?
   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

natural – non-renewable – raw materials – salty – nature

Nada : What's a mine, Salma ?
Salma : It's a place where we get (1) .... from the ground, like gold and coal.
Nada : Are raw materials the same as (2) .... resources ?
Salma : Yes, usually. Natural resources are things we can use from (3) .... , like wood and soil.
Nada : Our teacher says that coal is (4) .... , is that right ?
Salma : Yes, that's right.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies.

Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do. Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main ways to carry blood in and out of the heart are veins and ....
   a. lungs b. noses c. stomach d. arteries
2. Our blood has .... and oxygen that we need.
   a. salt b. nutrients c. carbon dioxide d. sugar

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the text about ?

   ....

4. What will happen if we don't get enough vitamin D ?

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Gazelles' favorite food is the daffodil.		
2. Lake Nasser is a very small lake.		
3. Gebel Elba is the home of Jubari.		
4. Jubari went to Lake Nasser.		

B. Complete the following.

1. The crocodile was ....
2. The mangroves were too ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When it doesn't rain, the grass .... grow.
   a. aren't b. will c. can't d. can
2. His cousin can sing .... he can't swim.
   a. and b. but c. because d. so
3. He likes to play football, ... he doesn't like tennis.
   a. and b. so c. because d. but
4. I have a friend .... lives in Aswan.
   a. where b. who c. which d. when

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. found – bones – The children – dinosaur.

   ....

2. builds – schools – houses – and – A builder.

   ....

8 Write an email of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Write an email to your friend Hossam about papyrus. Your name is Adam and your email address is adam92@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hossam-ahmed@gmail.com.

Guiding elements :

- strong plant
- made from
- baskets
- first book
- Ancient Egyptians

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 7



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our teacher put some .... in a pan.
   a. steam b. food c. ice d. water
2. Our teacher heated the water until it ....
   a. froze b. boiled c. melted d. used
3. We poured the water into a ....
   a. spoon b. fork c. pan d. container
4. The water froze and turned to ....
   a. ice b. steam c. gas d. liquid

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the largest hot desert in the world ?

   ....

2. How many countries does the Sahara Desert cover ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

plane – bike – relax – Exercise – sports

To be healthy, eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and fish. Play (1) .... with your friends. (2) .... regularly in the gym or outside. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your (3) .... Take some time to (4) .... and be quiet.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It was the year 2022 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was a pilot when he was younger. Grandpa showed them a pair of special shoes. Air resistance does not pull you to the ground when you wear these shoes.

So you can fly ! Hady wanted to fly over the stadium to watch his favorite basketball team. Hoda wanted to fly over the desert. Grandpa showed the children what to do. They had to hit their left foot with their right foot four times and then they could fly ! The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving a leg to that side. After 10 minutes, they flew down to the ground. Hady and Hoda loved flying !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "special" means ....
   a. usual b. normal c. natural d. not normal
2. Both Hoda and Hady wanted to ....
   a. fly b. read c. swim d. run

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why were the shoes special ?

   ....

4. How could children move right or left ?

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Acacia leaves give food to the crocodiles.		
2. When Donga ran north, he found the ground white and very soft.		
3. The Nubian ibex lives in the mountains.		
4. Jubari was born in Gebel Elba.		

B. Complete the following.

1. Turtles put their eggs in the ....
2. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on .... days.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I went to the club ………… I played football.
   a. which b. who c. what d. where
2. You came by train, ………… you ?
   a. don't b. didn't c. aren't d. won't
3. I'm your friend, ………… I ?
   a. aren't b. am not c. don't d. haven't
4. Younis said that he ………… get a medal in the race.
   a. can b. will c. could d. may

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. warming - us - trees - Mangrove - help - global - with.

…………………………………………………………

2. heart - from - our - away - move - Arteries - blood.

…………………………………………………………

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Gravity

Guiding elements :

- fall
- ground
- bring
- force
- space
- air

…………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………

Sample Test 8



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt.
   a. Industry b. Agriculture c. Engineering d. Drawing
2. Farmers grew a lot of .... such as cotton and rice.
   a. mud b. buildings c. crops d. clay
3. The Nile flooded and made the soil ....
   a. rich b. fertile c. poor d. dangerous
4. The Nile flooded every ....
   a. year b. day c. month d. week

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the Earth's oldest living ecosystem ?

   ....

2. Why are forests in great danger ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

What – Where – popular – volleyball – sports center

Ahmed : Hello Amr. (1) .... are you going ?

Amr : I'm going to the sports center because it's basketball club today.

Ahmed : Oh great. I don't play basketball, but I play volleyball. Is there a volleyball club at the (2) .... ?

Amr : Yes, I know. It's on Fridays because my sister goes to the (3) .... club.

Ahmed : Oh, good.

Amr : The volleyball club is (4) ...., so there are always a lot of people.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He

doesn't like to work. One lunchtime, he looks over the graden fence.

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working", replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day", says the grasshopper'. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work", says the ant.

Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. He knocks on the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry"."Come in", says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word carry on means ....
   a. stop b. delay c. continue d. cut
2. The grasshopper is ....
   a. lazy b. active c. clever d. helpful

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the moral of the story ?

   ....

4. Why doesn't the grasshopper have any food in winter ?

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Jubari could find the Wadi of the Gazelles.		
2. Jubari is Jubari's mother.		
3. Subira taught Jubari how to sleep.		
4. Jubari learned to run away very quickly.		

B. Complete the following.

1. The .... lived in Ras Hankorab beach.
2. Gazelles can't run .... on the sand.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ashraf has .... all his homework.
   a. did b. does c. do d. done
2. Maged .... Yasser could ride a bike.
   a. say b. says c. said d. said to
3. Nadine said she .... play the flute.
   a. couldn't b. can't c. won't d. wasn't
4. Where .... you stay on your last holiday ?
   a. do b. does c. did d. were

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – in – can – Camels – survive – hot – desert.

   ....

2. is – wood – made – A chair – of.

   ....

8 Write an email of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Write an email to your friend Mohammed about natural resources. Your name is Hamza and your email address is hamza2020@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is mohammednour@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

- renewable
- raw materials
- soil
- nature
- solar energy
- non-renewable

....

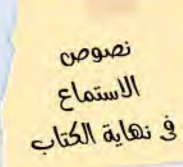
....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My cousin Ali .... in the Sinai Peninsula.
   a. flies b. travels c. tells d. lives
2. My cousin Ali lives close to .... Sinai.
   a. Valley b. Mount c. Lake d. Sea
3. Hany lives near a ....
   a. lake b. sea c. wadi d. valley
4. Hany is my ....
   a. brother b. father c. cousin d. uncle

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is the Ngorongoro Crater located in ?

   ....

2. What can you see inside the Ngorongoro Crater ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

festival – photograph – back – tickets – foot

Mariam loved watching animals. She wanted to see what they see. One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had (1) .... for the Luxor airplane festival. Mariam was very excited. When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the (2) .... Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall woman. Something fell, it was a (3) .... Mariam picked it up because she wanted to give it (4) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Amr is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy.

In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book. He does a lot of exercise because it's good for him. He has a healthy family, too. His sister Amira plays tennis and his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. Your heart is very important so you have to keep it healthy. It's important to do exercise. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Amr is clever because he ....
   a. eats chocolate b. keeps his heart healthy
   c. doesn't like fruit d. drinks much cola
2. It's important for our hearts to ....
   a. dig b. relax c. talk d. feed

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What sports does Amr play ?

   ....

4. What's the moral of the text ?

   ....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. People made Lake Nasser because they needed food.		
2. The crocodile was very dangerous.		
3. Wadi el Gemal is in Egypt's Eastern desert.		
4. Jubari wasn't brave.		

B. Complete the following.

1. Jubari .... his mother, Subira.
2. Donga lives in the mangrove ....

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. If I .... more time, I'd exercise more.
   a. have b. had c. am d. were
2. I would stay at home if it ....
   a. rains b. rained c. has rained d. had rained
3. Mohamed .... Adam he could play tennis at the club.
   a. say b. says c. told d. said
4. Omar is the person .... works at the hospital.
   a. which b. who c. where d. when

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. don't – shape – Liquids – a fixed – have.

   ....

2. is – Tension – force – a – pull.

   ....

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

The pinnacles

Guiding elements :

- unusual
- western Australia
- white limestone
- sand dunes
- wild flowers
- the tallest columns

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 10



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An .... is all the animals and plants in an area.
   a. forest b. grassland c. ecosystem d. desert
2. The ecosystem can be as small as a ....
   a. pond b. forest c. desert d. freshwater
3. The ecosystem can be as big as a ....
   a. forest b. desert c. pond d. saltwater
4. In an ecosystem, living thing .... with non-living things.
   a. present b. interact c. decorate d. make

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did people do when they came to the Mangrove forest ?

   ....

2. What did the kingfisher and the lizard hear ?

   ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

museum – work – Agriculture – important

Taha : Hello, my name's Mr Taha.
Ramy : Where do you (1) .... ?
Taha : I work at the (2) ....
Ramy : Oh great! Why was agriculture (3) .... in ancient Egypt ?
Taha : (4) .... was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt.
Ramy : That sounds wonderful.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello Nada

How are you ? We had a really fun history class yesterday. We were learning about ancient monuments. First, my teacher Mrs Huda wrote six countries on the board.

Then, she put photographs of six monuments on the desk. We had to guess what the artefacts were, how old they were, and where they came from. We worked in groups and we shared our ideas with the class. Finally, Mrs Huda told us the answers. The group with the most correct answers were the winners. It was fun! Let's meet at the weekend.

Reem

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Reem was in the .... yesterday.
   a. cinema b. park c. house d. school
2. Reem wants to meet Nada next ....
   a. weekend b. week c. month d. year

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who is this email to ?

....

4. What did Reem do with her team ?

....

The Reader

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Turtles lay their eggs in the sand.		
2. Crocodiles eat seagrass.		
3. Few animals live in the Wadi of the camels.		
4. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles.		

B. Complete the following.

1. Jubari decided to go .... to look for the Wadi of the Gazelles.
2. Jubari saw a .... in Ras Hankorab beach.

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. That smells really good. .... you baked a cake ?
   a. Are b. Do c. Have d. Has
2. Have you ever .... to China ?
   a. be b. being c. were d. been
3. I .... my homework yet.
   a. didn't finish b. haven't finished c. finished d. finishes
4. I think it .... rain tomorrow.
   a. will b. had c. is d. must

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fly – in - a hot - you - Would - like to - air balloon ?

   ....

2. soil - and - wood - resources - include - Natural.

   ....

8 Write a paragraph of 50 words using the following guiding elements.

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

Guiding elements :

- waterfalls
- beautiful
- oasis
- water
- flamingo
- lake

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 1

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

I'm Eman. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It's important to study other planets because it helps us solve some of the Earth's problem. It looks fun to live without gravity the people float all the time.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day ! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

Sample Test 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

Water is a liquid. When you freeze it, it turns to ice. Ice is a solid. When you melt it, it turns to a liquid. When you boil water, it turns from a liquid to a gas.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.

Sample Test 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

We are a healthy family. I love sports. My sister plays tennis. My mom walks to work. My dad rides his bike. We always eat healthy food.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

I'm Adham. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves. I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air !

Sample Test 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

When I was in Luxor I told my mom that I wanted to fly like a bird My mom bought us tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. I watched a hot air balloon pilot hit the flames. Soon, we were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

An oasis is a place in the desert which has lots of natural resources. If you visited an oasis, you would see beautiful trees and flowers in the middle of the desert. People have lived in these oases for hundreds of years. Agriculture is very important and people can grow lots of different fruits and vegetables.

Sample Test 5

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. They help make things such as skateboards and roads ! Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet. This might also help us solve some of Earth's problems.

Sample Test 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

Mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. They protect non-living and living things in the marine ecosystem. Many little fish swim among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish can't catch them. The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from air than other kinds of tree.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

The natural world in Africa is beautiful. People in this continent have made many things. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt; the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history.

Sample Test 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She heated the water until it boiled. Some of the water turned to steam. Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water froze and turned to ice.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

Sahara Desert is in Africa. The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA ! Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here.

Sample Test 8

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew a lot of different crops such as cotton and rice.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

Rainforests are Earth's oldest living ecosystem. They are a home to more than half of world's plants and animals species. Forests are in great danger because people are cutting down the trees. That affects the animals which live in the trees.

Sample Test 9

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

My cousin Ali who lives in the Sinai Peninsula told me a lot about the area where he lives. He lives close to a mountain which is called Mount Sinai. I have another cousin, Hany who lives near a wadi.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erapted millions of years ago. Inside the crater, there are wetlands and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there.

Sample Test 10

1. Listen and choose the correct answer :

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things interact with non-living things.

2. Listen and answer the questions :

The kingfisher visited her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree.
The lizard was sad. She explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. They could hear trucks and people shouting and the animals were worried.